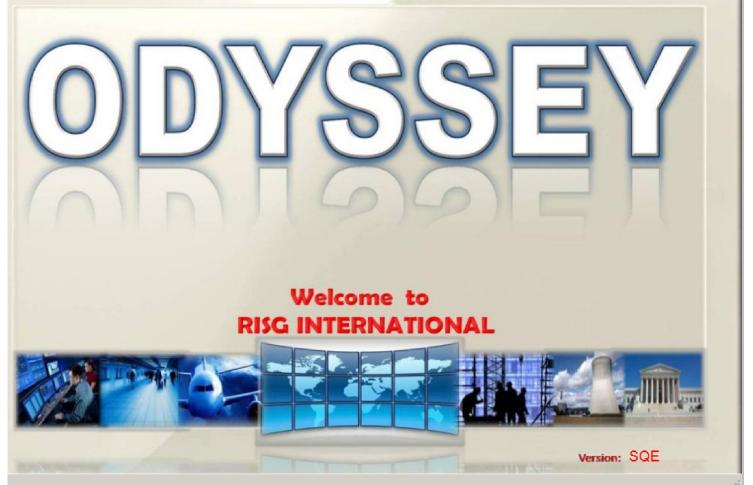


# Odyssey Admistrators Manual

### **RISG SECURITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM**



### Notices

The information given in this document is subject to change without notice and should not be construed as a commitment by Receptors Inc. Receptors Inc. assumes no liability for any errors that may appear in this document.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement and may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of this license.

Copyright © 2011 RISG Products

Microsoft Server Software <sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation Microsoft SQL Server <sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation Lead Tools <sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of Lead Technologies Crystal Reports <sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of Seagate.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

BEFORE WE BEGIN	1
HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL	1
INSTALLATION MANUAL	1
Administrators Manual	1
OPERATORS MANUAL	1
OPTIONS MANUAL	1
Mouse Clicks	1
Keyboard Entries	2
GETTING STARTED	2
THE SERVICES	2
THE ODYSSEY SERVICES	3
Standard Mode	3
DISPLAY MODE	5
STARTING RECEPTORS SERVICES 2 AND 3	5
STARTING RECEPTORS SERVICE 2	5
STARTING RECEPTORS SERVICE 3	6
RISG SECURITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM	7
HOW TO OPEN THE RISG SECURITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM	7
THE FUNCTION OF RISG SECURITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM	8
Parts of the RISG Security Management System Window	8
STANDARD CONVENTIONS	9
MENU BAR	9
ICONS	10
RIGHT CLICKING	10
CAUTIONS	
CIRCUIT NAMES AND NUMBERS	11
NON ADD SCREENS	11
PROGRAM KEY	11
PROGRAMMING	
PROGRAMMING OVERVIEW	12
LAN-ANX/AN1 PANEL	14
DATA ENTRY	14
Field Names	15
Adding a Record	15
Edit /etc/hosts button	16
CHANGING RECORDS	16
DELETING RECORD(S)	
CIRCUITS	
ADDING CIRCUITS	18
READERS	
OVERVIEW	
USER CIRCUIT NUMBER	
READER HARDWARE NUMBER	
Adding a Reader Circuit	
READER CIRCUIT FIELD NAMES	
Description	
User Circuit Numbers	
CHANGING RECORDS	
INPUTS CIRCUITS	24

	24
OVERVIEW	
USER CIRCUIT.	
INPUT HARDWARE NUMBER	
ADDING A INPUT CIRCUIT.	
ADD A CIRCUIT WINDOW FIELD NAMES	
User Names	
CHANGING RECORDS	
OUTPUTS	
OVERVIEW	
USER CIRCUIT.	
OUTPUTS HARDWARE CIRCUIT	
ADDING A OUTPUT CIRCUIT	
ADD A CIRCUIT WINDOW FIELD NAMES	
ADDING A CIRCUIT	
User Names	
CHANGING RECORDS	
COPYING RECORDS	
SUB-CONTROLLER MULTIPLEXER TABLE	
MULTIPLEXERS ARE TO BE POLLED BY THE CONTROLLER	
ADDING A SUB-CONTROLLER AND MULTIPLEXER	
Programming the EXP Board	
Adding a EXP-I	35
Adding a EXP-O	36
Adding a EXP-R	
DATA FORMAT	39
Data Entry	39
Building a Data Format	39
Field Names	40
Example	40
GROUP COMMAND	41
DATA ENTRY	41
Adding a Reader Group	42
Field Names	43
Creating a Reader Group	
GROUP SHUNT.	
Data Entry	44
Building a Group Shunt	
Field Names	
GROUP OUTPUT	
Data Entry	
Building a Group Output	
Field Names	
Copying Records	
ELEVATOR OUTPUT	
Overview	
DATA ENTRY	
Field Names	
Adding a Record	
CHANGING RECORD(S)	
DELETING RECORD(S)	
VIEWING RECORD(S)	
$\mathbf{N}$	

ELEVATOR ACCESS	51
Overview	51
DATA ENTRY	51
Field Names	52
Adding a Record	53
CHANGING RECORDS	53
DELETING RECORD(S)	54
VIEWING RECORD(S)	54
DIAL UP	54
Data Entry	54
Building a Dial Up Record	55
Field Names	
Copying Records	
SYSTEM CONTROL	
DATA ENTRY	56
Field Names	
Alarm Display	
Printers	
Report Printers	
Network Printers	
Trunk Lines	
Entering Data	
Initializing the Trunk Line	
GROUP CODES	
Data Entry	
Building a Group Code	
Field Names	
Copying Records	
ACCESS LEVELS	
Suggested Guidelines	
Administrators	
Data Entry	
Building an Access Level	
Field Names	
Copying Records	
TIME ZONES	
Data Entry	
Building a Time Zone	
Field Names	
General Notes	
USER LEVEL	
Data Entry	
Building a User Level	
Field Names	
COMMAND LEVEL	
Data Entry	
Changing a Command Level	
Field Names	
INSTRUCTION	
Data Entry	69

Building a Instruction	70
Field Names	70
TRANSACTION FILE	70
Starting the Transaction File	70
Modifying a Transaction Record	71
Field Names	71
Data Entry	72
Field Names	73
Building a Scheduled Event	73
Entering Data	
Creating a New Event	73
Copying Events	
Deleting An Event	
HOLIDAY	
Data Entry	76
Building a Holiday	
Field Names	
Copying Records	
MASTER PERSONNEL.	
OVERVIEW	
DATA ENTRY	
Adding Records	
Changing Records	
DELETING RECORDS	
OPENING RECORDS	
Last Name	
Card Number	
Employee ID	
SSN	
Working with Records	
MASTER PERSONNEL RECORD FIELD NAMES	
CARDHOLDER TAB	
Cardholder	
Card Information	
Card Information Access Requirement Field	
Giving a Card Access	
View GC (Group Code) button Find GC	
Add GC	
SPECIAL ACCESS READERS	
Card Number	
EMPLOYEE INFORMATION TAB	
Dept. Name	
Lock and Key	
Company 1, 2, and 3	
PERSONAL TAB	
EMERGENCY TAB	
INFORMATION TAB.	
Name of Contact Company	
Alpha/Numeric up to 30 characters	
Employed By	96

	07
Alpha/Numeric up to 30 characters	
From	
Works in Calendar	
То	
Works in Calendar	
Sponsor Info	
Аито Тав	97
Comments Tab	
COMPANY	98
Data Entry	98
Building a Company Record	99
Field Names	99
Adding Signers	100
Field Names	100
Copying Records	100
SEARCH PROFILE	101
Starting the Profiler	101
USE OR LÖSE REPORT	
De-activate cards	
Re-activate cards	
Printing records	
REPORTS	
Opening the Reports Module	
History / Old History	
Start/Stop Time Frame	
Transaction Type	
Running the Report	
Preview	
Card Holders who have Access to Reader	
Running the Report	
Personnel	
Running the Report	
ROLL CALL REPORT	
Running the report	
Log Message Report	
Circuits not gone to Alarm	
-	
Running the Report	
Time and Attendance Report	
Running the Report	
Guard Tour Reports	
Running the Report	
OPTIONAL FEATURES	
RADIONICS CIRCUIT	
Data Entry	
Building a Radionics Circuit	
Field Names	
Copying Records	
GROUP DISPLAY	
BEFORE GETTING STARTED	
DATA ENTRY	
Field Names	120

Adding a Record	121
CHANGING RECORDS	121
DELETING RECORD(S)	122
OPEN/CLOSE AREA	
Data Entry	122
Building a Open/Close Area Record	
Field Names	
General Operation	
Outside the Area	
INSIDE THE AREA	
CLOSING THE AREA	
OPENING THE AREA	
EXTENDED DOOR TIME	
Data Entry	
Building a Extended Door Time	
Field Names	
Copying Records	
GUARD TOUR	
Data Entry	
Building a Guard Tour	
Field Names	
GENERAL OPERATION	131
Copying Records	131
READER TOUR	131
Data Entry	131
Building a Reader Tour	133
Field Names	
GENERAL OPERATION	
Copying Records	
WATCH TOUR	
Data Entry	
Building a Watch Tour	
Field Names	
GENERAL OPERATION	
Copying Records	
VISITOR	
Data Entry	
VISITOR CARD	
Check Card Out	
Field Names	
Hold	
Check Card In	
Field Names	
Card Status	
TEMPORARY CARD	140
Check Out	140
Field Names	141
Checking In	141
Field Names	
BADGE LAYOUT TOOL	
Planning	

Opening the Badge Layout Tool14	14
Creating a new Badge Layout14	
Background Image	17
Field	18
Text15	51
Logo15	52
Barcode15	54
Background Color15	56
Modifying Objects15	57
Removing Objects15	57
Saving a Layout15	57
Opening a Layout15	58
Copying a Layout15	58
Deleting a Layout15	59
Print / Preview15	59
UTILITIES16	50
RISG SQL DATABASE BACKUP16	50
TAPES16	50
BACKING UP THE RIS DATABASE16	51
CHANGE BACKUP PATH16	55
RESTORING THE RIS DATABASE	57
SQL MAINTENANCE PLAN17	71
Modifying or Deleting the RISG Maintenance Plans17	79
NET USE	
CREATING A CONNECTION	30

# Before We Begin...

It must be understood that the ODYSSEY system is merely a software application that runs on a Microsoft Operating System. ODYSSEY also uses Microsoft SQL Server as the database engine. This installation manual is designed as a tutorial for making the ODYSSEY Server and Workstation operational. It is **NOT** intended as any sort of reference to Microsoft Operating System or Microsoft SQL Server operation. This manual assumes that Microsoft Operating System and Microsoft SQL Server has been properly setup and configured.

**Before the application can be used...**Users and their passwords need to be setup in Microsoft Operating System and the appropriate rights need to be established. Receptors application only adds additional rights to the user for purposes inside the various application modules adding a second tier security level via passkey level. The user names and rights need to be established in Microsoft Operating System and Microsoft SQL Server beforehand.

**Maintenance requirements...**SQL Server database and database devices need to be monitored periodically to insure the sizes are not too small or large for the system requirements. Additionally, there are some diagnostic functions that must be monitored occasionally to maintain optimum performance of the Server. Please consult your SQL Server Administrators Manual for **Optimizing SQL Server**.

# How to use this Manual

This manual set is divided into four sections:

# **Installation Manual**

Section one gives you a step-by-step guide on how to install the application software and make the appropriate changes to the Operating System and Database Engine to create an ODYSSEY system. It's also designed to be used as a reference guide on the software sections and utilities.

# Administrators Manual

The Administrators Manual gives you all the information necessary to complete programming information for the ODYSSEY system. It is also a reference point for the various aspects of the ODYSSEY system. Included are: Password management, Backup procedures, recovery procedures, and starting and stopping the ODYSSEY applications.

# **Operators Manual**

The Operation Manual provides "How To" on all aspects of the day-to-day operation of the system. Alarm processing, Commands, and Reporting are covered in this section.

## **Options Manual**

This Manual covers the various options associated to the Odyssey Software.

All of the manuals form a set. Within each manual there are some standard conventions that were followed.

## **Mouse Clicks**

It is assumed that when the manual refers to "Left Click", or "Right Click", the reader understands that we are referring to the mouse buttons.

# **Keyboard Entries**

All entries made by the keyboard are shown in the following format:

"ping 192.9.8.100"

If the command needs to be entered from a command prompt window the following format will be used:



"ping 192.168.0.100" default IP Address of RISG ANX Panel

# **Getting Started**

The Services

**Users and Passwords** 

**Error Logs** 

# **The Services**

- There are two (Server) programs that operate in the background that allow the Odyssey Access Control System to fully function. In the Microsoft Operating System, these programs are called **Services**. A Service is a module that begins operation as soon as the Server is started. When started as a standard Microsoft service, these programs are not affected by any Users logon procedure. These services control the Real-Time portion of the software. This is the segment responsible for communication to and from the panels, panel database control, alarm traffic, and history archiving.
- Receptors provides two modes of operation for the Services;
  - 1). Standard Mode is the typical Microsoft operating system method that most users would function under. In this mode, the required services are started automatically as soon as the Server is rebooted. The services run in the background, and require no user intervention.
  - **2). Display Mode** allows you to start both services separately. This provides you with a visual window for each service. This mode is used for debugging purposes and initial system start up. Display mode is a very effective tool allowing an operator to visually see data to and from workstations and field devices. There are however, disadvantages to Display mode. In this mode, Automatic Services must be disabled.

\*Additionally, since manual mode runs from the desktop, these services will shutdown if the user logs off.

### **The Odyssey Services**

- **Receptors Service 2** (*ridbio*) is the traffic manager between the Odyssey application and the database engine. It handles all traffic to and from the workstations. Service 2 also handles any panel database requirements by receiving them from Microsoft SQL Server and sending them to Service 3 for processing.
- **Receptors Service 3** (*rtp*) is the Real Time Process for the application. The service is responsible for all traffic to and from the field hardware and Workstation alarm processing. Rtp polls panels, sends database information to the panel, and processes transaction information from each field device.

### **Standard Mode**

- The following information indicates how to setup the Receptors Services for Standard Mode. This needs to be completed only once.
- The Services file selects which background programs or *services* will automatically start when the Operating System is started. You can also use this window to start the services that are set for manual.

#### Ø FROM THE START BUTTON:

§ Select **Settings**, then **Control Panel**, and then **Administrative Tools**. Select the **Services** icon and the window below will display.

Figure 1: Microsoft Services Window

	0 📑 🛛 📷 🕨 🖬 🕬	IÞ				
Services (Local)	Services (Local)					
	Receptors_Service2	Name	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On
	Start the service	Reformance Logs & Al		-	Manual	Local Se
	Store the sectore	🔍 Plug and Play	Enables a c	Started	Automatic	Local Sy
		PnP-X IP Bus Enumerator			Manual	Local Sy
		PNRP Machine Name P			Manual	Local Se
		Portable Device Enume		<b>e i i</b>	Manual	Local Sy
		C Power	Manages p Loads files t	Started	Automatic Automatic	Local Sy
		Print Spooler Problem Reports and S		started	Manual	Local Sy Local Sy
		Problem Reports and S	Injector serv	Started	Automatic	Local Sy
		Process Monitor	-		Automatic	Local Sy
		Reprotected Storage	Provides pr	Junca	Manual	Local Sy
		Quality Windows Audio			Manual	Local Se
		Receptors Service2			Manual	Local Sy
		Receptors_Service3 (GP			Manual	Local Sy
		🧟 Remote Access Auto C	Creates a co		Manual	Local Sy
		🔍 Remote Access Connec	Manages di		Manual	Local Sy
		🧟 Remote Desktop Confi	Remote Des		Manual	Local Sy
		🤹 Remote Desktop Services	Allows user		Manual	Network
		🧟 Remote Desktop Servic	Allows the r		Manual	Local Sy
		🦓 Remote Procedure Call	The RPCSS	Started	Automatic	Network

- § The **Service Name** is listed in the right-hand column. The **Status** section indicates whether the service is started.
- § The Startup Type area displays the type of startup required. (Manual or automatic). To start these services manually, you simply double click on the desired service, and the following window will appear:

	Log On	Recovery	Depender	ncies	
Service	name:	RidbioSen	rice		
Display	name:	Receptors	_Service2		
Descrip	tion:	ľ			A. 
1.000	executabl gram Files	e: (x86)\Recep	tors\ridblo.	exe	
Startup	2				
		e service sta	rtup options	<u>.</u>	
	status:	Stopped			
Service		1	10	Pause	Resume
	Rart	Stop	10. J. J. J. P.		Name of the second seco
You ca from he	n specify t	1 1 <u>2 - 2005</u>		apply when yo	u start the service

- § Click the **Start** button.
- § To set the service to start **automatically**, double click on the desired service and the above window will appear. Click on the down arrow in the **Startup Type** box and a pop down menu will appear. You can then make your choice for the service requirement.
  - **1).** Selecting **Automatic** will make this service perform the task whenever the server is restarted.

NOTE Automatic startup is only performed at boot time. If you make changes to this function, you would need to manually start the service if you do not intend to re-start the Server.

# The Completion of the Automatic startup for the Receptors Services is signified by three short beeps from the Server. This should occur after approximately three (3) minutes after boot-up.

Automatic Mode is intended for users that require the Server to begin communications with the field Panels and Workstations without intervention. This mode requires no additional user input, or anyone to log on to the Server. Receptors services *will* start without assistance, after a power failure (*depending on your hardware*), or other unintentional shutdown. It must be noted however, that this will only occur if the Microsoft operating system starts without errors. In addition, the SQL Server database engine must also be started and operating before the Receptors services can begin.

- Selecting Manual requires the operator to start the service after each system restart. This selection is used in conjunction with the Display Mode of Receptors Services 2 and 3. (See the Display Mode section below)
- 3). Selecting **Disable** will not allow the function to be started at all.

### **Display Mode**

Please Note It is extremely important that you DO NOT to attempt to run the Services 2 and 3 in STANDARD mode and DISPLAY mode at the same time. The applications will not operate correctly if this is attempted. Start the services from one, or the other—NOT BOTH!! Additionally, if one service is started automatically, then BOTH services must start in this manner. Do not attempt to start one service in Standard Mode, then the other from Display Mode.

In order to use the **Display Mode**, Receptors Services 2 and 3 Startup Type must be set to Manual in Microsoft Services. This is explained above in the <u>Standard Mode</u> section of this manual.

• Using the **Display Mode** allows a greater degree of understanding as to what's happening with communication in the system. In **Display Mode**, you can actually see the system poll, send and receive data to and from the field panels and Workstations. You can visually check panels downloading, and tiering data. You can also verify alarms being received from the field and commands being sent. **It's a very useful tool**.

# **Starting Receptors Services 2 and 3**

- Create a shortcut of Service 2 and Service 3 on the desktop. To do this open windows explorer to the Receptors directory. Locate the files 2.bat (Service 2) and 3.bat (Service 3). While holding down the Ctrl key, left mouse click on the files 2.bat and 3.bat. Both files will be highlighted. Place mouse over one of the highlighted files and do a right mouse click. In the pop down window select Send to > Desktop (Create shortcut).
- If you look on the Microsoft desktop you should see an icon titled **Shortcut to 2.bat** and **Shortcut to 3.bat**. Rename **Shortcut to 2.bat** to **Service2** and rename **Shortcut to 3.bat** to **Service3**.

### **Starting Receptors Service 2**

• From the Desktop double click on the Service2 icon and the Service2 window will appear.

Figure 3: Receptors Service2 Dos Window

ISG Service 2		23	
C:\Program Files\Receptors>ridbio -debug Debugging Receptors_Service2. fgwsio_init SQLSet returned 0 attempt SQLConnect L=sa P= hostname=win7-32 ris_path=C:\\Program Files\\Receptors\\ ssn=1 r Test Server started - waiting for socket connections tbl=tourdesc ,fun=insert ,key1=,username= opcode = 0x7f tbl=tourdesc ,fun=insert ,key1=,username= opcode = 0x7f	nuliholi=N	4 III +	
			1

• This Service is now started and is ready to interact. You can reduce this window to the status bar, but this service must remain active. Additionally, it needs to be closed manually when you wish to stop this service.

### **Starting Receptors Service 3**

• From the Desktop double click on the Service 3 icon and the Service3 window will appear.

Figure 4: Receptors Service3 Dos Window

RISG Service 3	 	
initialize ctrl		*
initialize trns		
initialize xcodetype initialize para		
para count=1		
syscode=0		E .
initialize hwrd		
initialize an1c		
initialize rscc		
initialize mont		
initialize cntl		
initialize wsnm		
initialize diag		
initialize rcnt		
initialize hstat		
initialize dlst		
initialize ickt_ram		
initialize grsh_ram		
initialize rckt_ram		
initialize ockt_ram		
initialize opcl_ram		
initialize lanx_ram		
initialize ctrl_ram		
initialize tzon_ram		
		*
	And the second se	

• Service 3 or the Real Time Process is now running. This window is the most active and informative of the two windows. However you will not see any communication activity between the Server, field hardware and Workstations for approximately one (1) minute. In this window, you can see the poll and response of each controller in the system. You can also see transactions to and from the field, as well as commands and alarm window function. This window can be very useful in bringing up the system. You can visually verify that panel are communicating and downloading correctly. Below is a sample of what you will see after one (1) minute of starting Service3.

Figure 5: Receptors Service3 Polling Dos Window

RISG Service 3
"lanrtio 19 0" tx **> e8 "lanrtio 19 0" **** send cf 03 52
"lanrtio 19 0" rx< e8 "lanrtio 19 0" - receive b7 03 00 03 7f 7f 3b
"lanrtio 19 0" tx **> e8 "lanrtio 19 0" **** send cf 03 52 "lanrtio 19 0" rx< e8
"lanrtio 19 0" - receive b7 03 00 03 7f 7f 3b "lanrtio 19 0" tx **> e8
total_cnt=69 overwrite=0 taproc new minute 15:55
rtp <sup>°</sup> new minute 15:55 ssn=1 tzproc new minute 10/11/2011 15:54 watchdog timer = 127
new minute daynmb = 2 time = 15:55 tzones in effect 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
01000000000000000000000000000000000000
"lanrtio 19 0" rx< e8 "lanrtio 19 0" - receive b7 03 00 03 7f 7f 3b "lanrtio 19 0" tx **> e8
"lanrtio 19 0" $\frac{1}{3}$ cf 03 52 "lanrtio 19 0" $\frac{1}{3}$ cf 03 52
"lantio 19 0" - receive b7 03 00 03 7f 7f 3b "lantio 19 0" tx **> e8

• Both windows can be left opened as indicated at the right. These windows can also be reduced to icons on the menu bar.

Care must be taken however if you close any one of these windows, the server functionality will be lost. You will lose the ability to communicate to the field devices or transmit alarms to Workstations.

# **RISG Security Management System**

- How to open the RISG Security Management System
- The Functions of the RISG Security Management System
- Standard Conventions

### How to open the RISG Security Management System

- There are two (2) standard methods of opening the Desktop software:
  - **1).** Icons are placed on the Microsoft Desktop to operate any executable program. If the icons are not on the Microsoft Desktop the Odyssey Installation manual describes how to complete this task. Looking at the Microsoft Desktop you will find the following icon:

#### Figure 6: RISG Database Icon



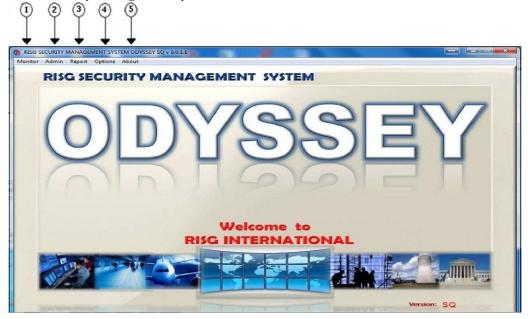
- § By clicking on this icon, the **RISG Security Management System** window will appear.
- 2). Or you can click on the Start button at the bottom left side of the Microsoft Windows Desktop. Highlight the **Receptors** folder and a menu will appear to the right.

#### Figure 7: Microsoft Start Button



§ Select **RISG Database** from the list and the **RISG Security Management System** window will appear.

Figure 8: RISG Security Management System Window



### The Function of RISG Security Management System

- This section is the area that data is entered into the database. The RISG Security
   Management System window can be used on the Server or Workstation and does not need to
   be open for the Server software to be operational. From the RISG Security Management
   System window, you can also open the Alarm portion of the Odyssey software.
- When the **RISG Security Management System** window is opened, you can move to any point in the system by clicking on the represented function on the menu bar at the top of the window. All functions in the system are independent. You're only required to open this window first, and then move to the area you require.

### Parts of the RISG Security Management System Window

Ø Drop Down Menus – RISG Security Management System Window

#### **Available Functions** 1. Alarm Alarm Display. 2. Admin Administrator, System Control, Data Format, Dial Up, Visitor, Verify Profile, Search Profile, Elevator Access, Use Or Lose It Database Restore. History, Guard Tour, Card holders who have access to 3. Report Reader Personnel, Roll Call, Log Message, Circuits no gone by Alarm, Old History, Time Attendance Report, Time Attendance Export 4. Options Radionic Circuit, Group Display, AES Key, Open: Close Area, Extended Door Time, Tour (Guard, Reader, Watch), Language Switch (English, Chinese, Thai) 5. About Configuration, CCTV Setup, Radionic Setup, Show Host, About RISG Products REV.-A RELEASED 08/2011 PUBLICATION# 5567 Page 8 of 180

# **Standard Conventions**

- As we move toward the programming areas of the software, we need to go over a few of the standard conventions used in each area.
- There are three ways to navigate within the modules:
  - 1). Menu Bar at the top of each Window
  - 2). Icons below the Menu Bar
  - 3). Right clicking of the mouse

# Menu Bar

• Each of the Modules (except those as listed in the program key) begins with the same type of window. The Reader Circuit Window is shown here as an example.

#### Figure 9: Modules Menu Bar

Master Personnel         Badging         Hardware Configuration         Access         Command         Map Design         User-Passkey Letter           Card Holder         Employee Information         Personal         Emergency         Information         Auto         Comment         Time Attended	RISG Administrator version 5.4.1.6 [win7] [Server]												
Card Holder Employee Information Remained Emproperty Information Auto Comment Time Attend	els	User-Passkey Levels	sign Us	Design	Map [	Command	Access	ration	are Configur	Hardwa	Badging	nnel	Master Person
Conditionation Auto Comment Intervention	nce	nt Time Attendanc	omment	Comr	Auto	formation	gency	Emen	Personal	mation	ployee Info	Emp	Card Holder

- Each module is much the same with menu items on the top, and icons to allow for ease of use. The following information explains the use of each Menu Bar selection:
  - Ø Master Personnel opens a sub menu with:
    - § Card Holder
    - § Employee Information
    - § Personnel
    - § Emergency
    - § Information
    - § Auto
    - § Comment

#### Ø Badging

- Ø Hardware Configuration opens a sub menu with:
  - § Configuration
  - § Database
  - § Finger Scan
- Ø Access opens a sub menu with:
  - § Access level
  - § Time zone
  - § Group Code
  - § Event Schedule
  - § Holiday
  - § Elevator Control
- Ø **Command** opens a sub menu with:
  - § Group Reader
  - § Group Input
  - § Group Output
  - § Instruction
  - § Transaction
- Ø Map Design
- Ø User-Passkey Levels opens a sub menu with:

- § User Level
- § Passkey Level
- § User And Passkey

# Icons

• Below the Menu Bar is a group of Icons. The following information lists their function:



Save: save new information to database.



Edit: allows you to view/edit Device information.



Properties: allows you to view/edit Device information.



**Delete/Remove Record**: allow you to delete a single or multiple records from the list Window. First, highlight the desired record(s) you want to delete then select the icon.



Multiplexer: Allows you to add multiplexer device to RISG System.



Reader: allows you to add Reader device to RISG System.



Input: allows you to add Input device to RISG System.



Output: allows you to add Output device to RISG System.



Config: allows you to get back to configuration page



Print: allows you to print information.

# **Right Clicking**

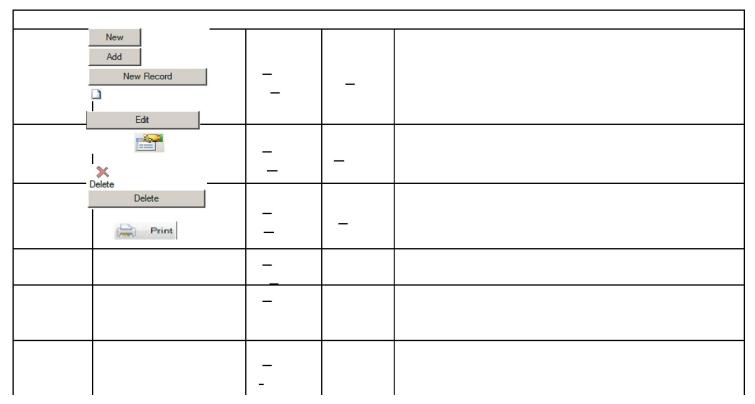
• Once you have a Window open, you can **Right-click** the Mouse and the pop-up box shown will appear:

#### Figure 10: File Menu

nel Number	Panel Name	IP Address	Panel Description	Panel Type	Panel Status
Right the cor	Alexand Click option ( atroller	192 100 Edit ANX Add/Edit Circuits Delete ANX Connect to ANX	AND: 000	ANX	

• You can highlight any of the functions listed in the box to perform.

- When using the **Edit**, **Delete**, **and View** selections, you must first highlight a database entry in the query window you started in.
- The table below indicates which of the three ways are available for each function or command that is to be performed:



#### Table 1: ICONS

## **Cautions**

### **Circuit Names and Numbers**

• Because of the logic of the Odyssey system, it is not allowed to edit the Circuit Name, or User Circuit Number of an existing record. The correct method of changing a Name or a Number is to delete the record and enter it again.

### **Non Add Screens**

• There are certain modules where the **Add** function is not available. These modules contain fixed database records that can only be edited.

# **Program Key**

On the following programming sections, the Program Key displayed here will be provided to indicate what commands are available for that section.

Table 2: Program Key

PROGRAM KEY					
Menu Bar	Button	Pop-up			
Р	Р	Р			
Р	Р	Р			
Р	Р	Р			
Р	Р	Р			
	Menu Bar P P P	Menu BarButtonPPPPPPPP			

# Programming

### Programming overview

• In order to complete the programming of the Odyssey system in the most effective manner, follow the guidelines listed here. The list below indicates the order in which the various tables need to be completed. This sequence will insure you have each section completed in the correct order, so that the files from one table are available to the next.

#### 1). Users and Passwords

- § Before proceeding with any programming on the system data, all appropriate Users and Passwords must be entered. This includes both the Microsoft User list and the Odyssey User Levels and Command Levels.
- **2).** Descriptions (Trunk Line, Controller (AN1's, ANX's), Multiplexer (AN2's, AN4's, AN5's, EXP-R's, EXP-O's and EXP-I's)
  - § You can enter the required descriptions as appropriate. They are very helpful when bringing the system on-line, as there is more information to let you know what's happening. You can enter descriptions prior to circuits if desired.

#### 3). System Control File

- § **Workstation** names need to be entered in order for the alarm display module to connect. No alarms will be received or command functions enabled until this has been completed.
- **Trunkline** ports for serial panels need to be entered. (*Serial Systems Only*) Please consult the Trunk line section before making entries here.
- § Printers such as transaction logging printers are entered here

#### 4). ANX, AN1 LAN Panels

§ If you are using LAN panels, they should be entered at this time. *Please consult the Trunk line section before making entries here.* 

#### 5). MUX Port Map

§ The port map should be completed next, to define which address(s) are to be polled, and what the panel type is.

#### 6). Transaction File

§ The system defaults all baseline alarm traffic to Alarm Display1. If this is not the desired location, you will need to edit this file to the appropriate Workstation. 99 indicates the value is changed elsewhere in other modules.

#### 7). Circuits

- § **Output Circuits** can now be entered now corresponding to the system layout.
- § **Input Circuits** can be entered after the outputs are complete. By adding output circuits first, all related outputs can be assigned to their respective inputs in a single step. Inputs can be loaded according to the system layout.
- **Reader Circuits** can be entered according to the system layout. By adding output and input circuits first, all related outputs and inputs can be assigned to their respective readers in a single step.

At this point you can begin the initialization process to the panels and verify communication. All of the panels should poll and respond at this time. Alarms will transmit and most command functions will operate. Card and Time Zone functions will NOT function however until programmed. The secondary programming requirements can be completed before, or after initialization.

#### 8). Data Formats

§ If you require special or custom data formats for cards, they should be programmed now.

#### 9). Access Levels

§ The Access Level tables can be completed any time after the Readers are programmed. They can be added to, and modified at any time.

#### 10). Times Zones

§ Just like the Access Levels, the Time Zones can be added, and modified at any time.

#### 11). Group Codes

§ Once the Access Levels and Times Zones are completed, you can build the Group Code Tables.

#### 12). Cardholders

- § At this point you have all of the necessary data completed to begin the card activation process.
- This would complete baseline operational programming. The items that are left to be completed are the peripheral tables:

GROUP COMMAND	GROUP SHUNT	GROUP OUTPUT
INSTRUCTIONS	ELEVATOR OUTPUT	ELEVATOR ACCESS
DIAL UP	MAP SETUP	HOLIDAY

EMERGENCY	EVENT SCHEDULE	EXTENDED DOOR TIME
OPEN/CLOSE AREAS	VERIFY PROFILE	

After these tables are programmed, the optional files can be completed such as:

ACCESS LEVEL 1024	BADGING	GUARD TOUR
READER TOUR	WATCH TOUR	CCTV
SIMULATION	MULTIPLE HOLIDAY	BIOMETRIC
ALARM PRINT/E-MAIL	SPECIAL ACCESS LEVEL	<b>RI Profile</b>
TIME & ATTENDANCE SEND	TIME & ATTENDANCE HISTO	DRY

 $\varnothing$  DETAILS FOR THE ABOVE MODULES CAN BE FOUND IN THE OPTIONAL FEATURES SECTION OF THIS MANUAL.

# LAN-ANX/AN1 Panel

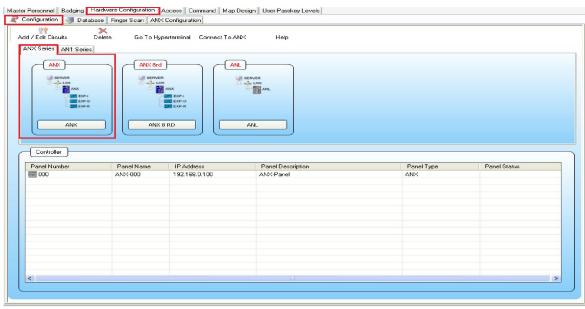
This ANX/AN1 Configuration Manual is designed to help you to setup an ANX/AN1 panel and to make alterations to an existing ANX/AN1 if needed.

<u>Caution</u> Your Network Administrator generally provides IP addresses. If you are not familiar with TCP/IP protocol, please consult your IT department before proceeding.

### **Data Entry**

- Click on Management System window Admin at the top of the RISG Menu Security
- Click on Hardware Configuration Tab.
- Click on ANX button to add a new ANX Panel

#### Figure 11: List a LAN-ANX/AN1



• The List a ANX window will be active only at this time.

\_

anel Number	Panel Name	IP Address	Panel Description	Panel Type	Panel Status
000	ANX-000	192.168.0.101	ANX-000	ANX	
					1

- At this point, you can Add, Change, View, or Delete a record.
- You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a new record, the **Add a LAN-AN1/RSC/GP1** window will appear:

		×	
	 VX-000 92.168.0.100	Panel Type 1. LAN - ANX / AN1	-5
(3) (4)	 NX-Panel	Save	

#### Figure 13: Add a LAN-ANX/AN1

### **Field Names**

- 1.) ANX Number: Number of the ANX Panel
- 2.) ANX Name: Network name given to the panel
- 3.) ANX IP Address: The Network IP address.
- 4.) ANX Description: The general description of the panel up to 40 characters.
- 5.) Panel Type: The Network IP address.

<u>Caution:</u> Your Network Administrator generally provides IP addresses. If you are not familiar with TCP/IP protocol, please consult your IT department before proceeding.

- 6.) Edit/etc/hosts: This button will open the \etc\Host file for editing.
- 7.) Edit: To edit ANX.

### Adding a Record

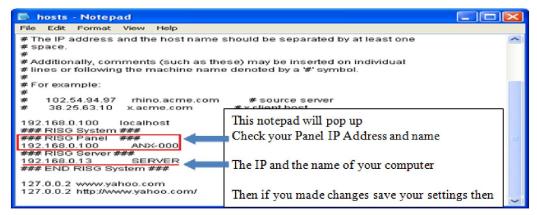
- Click on the ANX box
- A pop up window will appear
- Enter the Panel IP Address in the ANX IP Address box.
- Enter the description for this Panel in the **Description** box.

### Edit /etc/hosts button

- When you have completed the ANX panel entries, you must add these entries to the hosts file used by system Networking. It is *extremely* important that you use exactly the same syntax in the host file that you used in the LAN Panel file. If the entries are not made, or made incorrectly, the panels will make a connection to the server, but will not communicate or download. You can use the Edit/etc/hosts button provided on the ANX Panel window. *This procedure can only be performed on the Server*.
- You can also edit the host file manually; you can use Notepad or any text editor. The location of the file is:

Windows\system32\drivers\etc\ the file name is "hosts" (with no extension) Here is an example of the Hosts file:

#### Figure 14: edit/etc/hosts File



- Once you have entered the desired data, you can press the **File** button and select **Save** from the menu.
- Once you have saved data, you can press the File button and select Exit from the menu and you
  will return to the add ANX pop up window.
- Once you've entered the desired data, you can press the Save button to save the record. The ANX window will appear showing the new record just created.

#### Figure 11: The LAN-ANX/AN1

anel Number	Panel Name	IP Address	Panel Description	Panel Type	Panel Status
000	ANX-000	192.168.0.100	ANX- Panel - Lobby	ANX	

### **Changing Records**

• To change existing records, in the LAN-ANX/AN1 window, open the required LAN-ANX/AN1 panel then highlight, right click select EDIT option

#### Figure 16: Changing a Single The LAN-ANX/AN1record

nel Number	Panel Name	IP Address	Panel Description	Panel Type	Panel Status
000	ANX-000	Edit ANX	ANX- Panel - Lobby	ANX	
		Add \Edit			
		Delete ANX			
		Connect to ANX			

• When the record opens, the LAN-ANX/AN1 window will appear:

#### (You cannot change the ANX/AN1 No. in a record.)

#### Figure 17: Change a LAN-ANX/AN1

🔠 ANX		X
🔜 👬 🖬		
ANX Number	0	Panel Type
ANX Name	ANX-000	1. LAN - ANX / AN1
ANX IP Address	192.168.0.100	
ANX Description	ANX- Panel - Lobby	
		Save

 At this point you can make the necessary changes you can change any data except the ANX/AN1 Number. When you are ready click the SAVE button and the changes will be saved and you will be returned to the LAN-ANX/AN1 window.

# <u>Reminder</u> – if you change the ANX/AN1 Name or the IP Address you must make the same changes in the Hosts file under the Edit/etc/hosts button.

• If you cancel a record, the **ANX** window will appear and ask you if you want to abandon the editing.

	🔠 ANX			×
5	🗔 🕅 🖬			
4				
	ANX Number	0	Panel Type	
	ANX Name	ANX-000	1. LAN - ANX / AN1	-
	ANX IP Address	192.168.0.100		
	ANX Description	ANX- Panel - Lobby		
			Save	

Figure 18: To save record (ANX)

4). At this point if you select save button, you will be able to change the ANX panel.

# **Deleting Record(s)**

• Follow the procedures for Adding Record(s) records to delete records. Highlight the panel then right click select **DELETE ANX**. However be careful when selecting records to delete that they are the records you want to delete. Deleted records cannot be recovered. If you make a mistake you will need to create the record again.

# **Circuits**

### **Adding Circuits**

In this section we will show you how to add Readers, Inputs and outputs circuits to the software. Go to the **Hardware Configuration/Configuration** then right-click on the ANX/AN1 Panel and click on **Add/Edit Circuits**. You get the **ANX/AN1 Configuration** screen and you are ready to add circuits.

Figure 19: Hardware Configuration/Configuration

Naster Personnel Badging Hardwere Configuration Access Command Map Design User-Parakey Levels					
Z Configuration J Database Finger Scan ANX Configuration					
Add / Edi Crouts Defete Go To Hyperterminal Connect To ANK Help					
Controler					
Panel Number Panel Name IP Address Panel Description Panel Type Panel Status					
2000 ANX-000 192153.0.101 ANX ANX ANX					

Figure 20: Controller Configuration Screen

		Hardware Configu			Map Design	User-P	asskey Levels						
EXP Board		abase Finger Sca Reader	-	input	۲	Output		X Remove	Return To I	) fain Panel	Config		
000 Trun IP Addres			Multiplexe EXP + I				- EXP + 0			EXP - R			
Rea	er Input Ser Circuit 10-00-000	Output	Input input	EXP	4	•	Output	EXP-0	-	Reader in Reader On	ut Output EXP-R uit	•	
		*											

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete a circuit.

### Readers

Readers refer to the card readers that are programmed into the system. This section deals with the Reader Circuit File.

### **Overview**

• Readers are connected to the various field panels in the system.

- As devices that provide access or control throughout the system, they require definition as to type, format, and location. Additionally, you can program the time they are opened each time they're used, and how long they're allowed to remain open after they are used. Inputs and Outputs can be related to Readers to perform specialized functions.
- There are several different options available to provide various requirements by the system.
- When you make an entry to the system, these parts are defined automatically. You are not required to program them separately. A reader is defined as one unit.
  - Reader Port
  - Reader LED Control
  - Locking Device
  - Door Contact
  - Request To Exit

# **USER CIRCUIT NUMBER**

In the Receptors software, you define the **Hardware Circuit Number** (*a specific point on a specific panel*), to a **User Circuit Number**. Once this definition is made, all other programming is completed using the User Circuit Number. Access Levels, Commands, History files will always reference the User Circuit Number. The following circuit files are the only place you will reference a Hardware Circuit Number.

## **READER HARDWARE NUMBER**

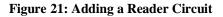
The reader hardware circuits are specific ports on a given panel with a unique port address. The numbers define the readers connected to the panels. The format of the Hardware address maps out the location of the reader in the system. The format of:

#### XXX-YY-ZZZ

- Whereas:
  - XXX = Line No.: Is the Controller address (ANX or AN1)
  - YY = Panel Address:
    - § ANX, AN1 = Will always = 00
    - § EXP-R = (Sub panel for the ANX panel only) addresses = 1 15
    - § AN5 = (Sub panel for the AN1 panel only) addresses = 1 15
    - §
  - **ZZZ** = **Port Address:** The Reader Port Address on the panels runs in groups of four starting at **000**. The second is **004**, the third **008**, then **012**, **016**, **020**, **024**, and **028**. On an EXP-R or AN5, you only have Reader Port Addresses **000** and **004**.

## **Adding a Reader Circuit**

You can use any of these ways to add a Reader circuit, Click on **Reader** and the arrow at the right and selecting available Reader Circuit from the list. Or right click on the Reader table.



EXP Board 000-00-000 000-00-004	Multiplexer	Culput Remove	🎨 🦻 💦 Return To Main Panel Conlig	
000 Trunk Line Controller Panel 0 IP Address: 192.168.0.100	~ EXP - I	EXP-0	EXP · R	
Reader Input Output Reader Circuit	Input EXP4	Cutput EXP-0	Reader Input Dulput EXP-R Reader Circuit	

- As you can see in the above window there are no readers programmed in the system at this time.
- Click the on the **Reader** button click on 000-00-00 and on the **Reader Circuit** window will appear:

Figure 22: Adding a Reader Circuit

EXP Board Reader 000-00-000 000-00-004 000 Trunk Line Controller Reader 000	Country Remove Return To Main Panel Config	
Panel 0 IP Address : 192.168.0.100	Hardware Number 000-00-000 User Circuit Number Description Hardware Number 000-00-000 User Circuit Number Reader Type 4 Standard Reader * A/P From Arca (Rell Call Dosc.) 0_ K/P Keacer type 6 - HUCHES 4-Bit Koy * A/P For Arce (Roll Call Dosc.) 0_ A/P To Arce (Roll Call Dosc.	
	Keycode Timeout       10       System Code       Instruction Number       Door Alarm Priorities       0         Reader bit format       0       Door Relock Timer       5       Door Alarm Priorities       0       0         Threat Level       0       Door Alarm Priorities       0       0       0       0         REX Shunt / Unlock Timezone       Options       Time & Attendence       Instruction Number       Time & Attendance         © Shunt and Unlock       © Shunt Cony       REX mode       Ims & Attendance       Ims & Attendance         ShuntUnlock Timezone       0       Ext mode       Ims & Attendance       Ims & Attendance         ShuntUnlock Timezone       0       Ext mode       Shunt and Unlock       Shunt Only       Ims & Attendance         CCTV Camera No.       CCTV ALARM NO.       CCTV Line No.       Audit Printers       0       0         Please enter the new reader circuit information.       Externation.       Externation.       0       0       0	

◆ Reader ■ ₩		
•	Reader Type	000-00-000       User Circuit Number       000-00-000         aeder 1
Related Associate Keycode Tin Reader bit f Threat Leve	neout 10_ System C	ock Timer 5 Door Alarm Priorities 00_
<ul> <li>Shunt ar</li> <li>Shunt O</li> </ul>		Options         Door Contact       Annunciate         Clear Required       Watch Tour         REX mode       Time & Attendance In         Shunt and Unlock       Shunt Only
CCTV Came		ARM No. O_ CCTV Line No. O_ Audit Printers O_ O_ O_

### **Reader Circuit Field Names**

• The following table is a listing of the Field Names for the Reader Circuit that can be programmed for **ANX** or **EXP-R**:

Fie	ld Name	Description				
1).	Hardware Number	Formatted Numeric field that identifies the Reader port.				
2).	User Circuit Number	11 character, Alpha/Numeric Name that identifies the Reader to the system				
3).	Reader Type	When down arrow is clicked will display a drop down pick list that Identifies the type of Reader circuits supported by the system:				
		2 Hard Anti Pass Back Reader				
		3 Soft Anti Pass Back Reader				
		4 Standard Reader				
		5 Hard Anti Pass Back Keypad Reader				
		6 Soft Anti Pass Back Keypad Reader				
		7 Keypad Reader				
4).	A/P From/To Area	2 Separate fields, Assigns Area to the Reader used to Entry/Exit, Roll Call and Antipas back.				
5).	K/P Reader Type	Type of Reader Connected to ANX and AN1. Sets up the channel for communication protocol such as Sensor, Weigand or AMAG.				
6).	Alarm Type	Categorizes the type of Reader. When the button is clicked a drop down menu will be displayed. You can Add, Edit or Delete categories, as you desire. You will type in the type of reader using up to 16 characters Alpha/Numeric. These names will appear in the Alarm Type line in the Alarm detail window				
	Displays	Control File				
7).	Reset Antipassback Timer	This will the Reader Antipassback mode when a specific time is enter				
8).	Primary Display	Number of the Primary Workstation that activity on this Reader is to be routed to. Corresponds to the Alarm Display number in the System Control File.				

Fie	ld Name	Description
9).	Secondary Display	2 fields available, number of other Workstation(s) that activity on this Reader is to be routed to. Corresponds to the Alarm Display number in the system.
10).	Display Maps	3 Fields available, works in conjunction with the Map program. These numbers corresponds to the map number(s) this Reader will be display on. When this button is clicked a list of available programmed maps will be displayed by Map ID# and description.
11).	Related Outputs	User name of Outputs programmed in the Output file. This Output will follow the alarm conditions of the Readers input, and turn on when in alarm condition.
12).	Related Input 1/2	When this button is clicked a list of available programmed inputs will be display by User Name and description. These inputs will shunt when the Door Position Switch is shunted.
13).	Associated Reader	When this button is clicked a list of available programmed readers will be displayed by User Name and description. This is in the case where there is a Reader on both sides of a door and they share the same door contact.
14).	Watch Tour	Works in conjunction with the Watch Tour file. The reader can be selected as the start reader for a Watch Tour.
15).	Key code Timeout	For Keypad Readers, when a Keypad entry is made the value entered in second is the time allowed to complete the Keypad entry sequence.
16).	Threat Level	Optional software for ANX and AN1. Threat level is another level access control. Mainly used for an emergency situation. Using this option enables you to lock out readers thusly minimizing access to a facility during an emergency or whenever deemed necessary.
17).	System Code	System Code or a Facility Code for the cards used in your system is entered here.
18).	Door Relock Timer	Number of seconds before the door locks after being unlocked. Note-Door automatically relocks when opened.
19).	Door Held Timer	Numeric from 1-3600 seconds. Timer for the number of seconds the door for this Reader is allowed to be opened before transmitting a 'Door Held Open; alarm condition.
20).	Instruction Number	The instruction file is the location where instruction sets can be created for use in the Alarm Display. Instruction is assigned by their number to individual input circuits and can also be assigned globally to reader circuits in the transaction file. An instruction is 255 characters in length.
21).	Door Alarm Priorities	The allows different reader door alarms to alarm with different priorities and instructions and in turn allows door alarms to display different colors on our map as well as play different sounds.
22).	Partition Levels	Works in conjunction with the <b>User Level</b> file, There are 5 Partition Levels, 1-5, and 0 for no partition. Levels 1-4 can only access circuit data within their partition and Level 5 can access data in all partitions.
23).	Rex Shunt/Unlock Time zone	Works in conjunction with the field listed below. Set the Reader to either only, or Shunt and Unlock based on the Time Zone.
24).	Shunt/Unlock Time zone	Works in conjunction with the field listed above. Sets the Reader to either Shunt only, or Shunt and Unlock based on the Time Zone.
25).	Door Contact	Check Box Enables the Door Contact of the Reader to send alarm condition to the host.
26).	Clear Required	Check Box assigns a second step in the Alarm acknowledgement of this Reader. Reader will provide an Alarm to the screen. When Alarm is acknowledge, a second "Clear" will be required.
27).	Annunciate	Will cause an alarm to be printed for every transaction through every reader through this reader if checked.
28).	Watch Tour	Works in conjunction with the Watch Tour file. The reader can be selected as the start reader for a watch Tour.
29).	Rex Mode	Allow you to select the sets the Request to Exit (REX) mode of the Reader to either shunt and unlock the door, or shunt the door only when requested
30).	Time And Attendance	Optional software for Receptors Security Management System. Time & Attendance is mainly used to track a person's time when entering or leaving the building or area using a card reader
31).	CCTV Camera No.	Works in conjunction with the CCTV interface. Corresponds to the camera number used by the various CCTV controllers, Through the CCTV interface, the system will send this number via Serial port when an alarm condition occurs on this input.
	CCTV Alarm No.	Works in conjunction with the CCTV interface. Corresponds to the alarm number used by the various CCTV Controllers. Through the CCTV interface, the system will send this number via Serial port when an alarm condition occurs on the Reader. Also available in Camera/Monitor format.
33).	CCTV Line No.	Enables you to have two com ports to communicate to CCTV systems. Works in conjunction with the registry file.
34).	Audit Printers	3 fields available, identifies the printer that activity on this reader to be routed to. Corresponds to the Printer number in the System Control file.

### **User Circuit Numbers**

- Before you start an entry, take a few moments and complete some system planning. It's important to standardize on your naming conventions. If you plan ahead, you can make reporting, and subsequent programming easier. Using User Circuit Numbers that start out the same such as "GATE\_\_\_\_\_", "BLDG\_\_\_\_\_", "DOOR\_\_\_\_", "RDR\_\_\_\_\_", or "FLR\_\_\_\_\_" will make it easier for you to Query later.
- The following is a sample of a finished Add a Circuit window:

#### Figure 24: Sample Reader Circuit

🕐 Reader	-				X
🖬 🕅					
	Hardware Number Description Reader Type K/P Reader Type Alarm Type Primary Display	000-00-000     Use       Front Door Lobby     4       4 Standard Reader     6       6 - HUGHES 4-Bit Key       1_ Secondary Dis	The second secon	A/P From Area (Roll A/P To Area (Roll A/P To Area (Roll C Reset Antipassback Display Maps	Call Desc.) 0
Related C Associate Keycode Tir Reader bit fo Threat Leve	Reader neout 10_ System ormat 42_ Door	em Code 0 Relock Timer 5 Held Timer 30	Related Input Related Input Instruction Numt Door Alarm Prior Partition Levels	2	
Shunt and Shunt On		Options Door Conta Clear Requi REX mode Shunt and U	red 🗌 Watch Tour	No Tire 8 Time 8 Time 8	ttendence ne & Attendance & Attendance In & Attendance Out & Attendance In/Out
		ALARM No. 0_ CC		Audit Printers	0_ 0_ 0_

• Once you've entered the desired data, you can press the 🔝 button to save the record.

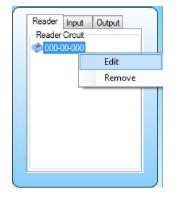
#### Figure 25: RISG Reader Circuit W/Reader listed

Reader	r Circuit -	Output	
<b>000</b>	00-000		

### **Changing Records**

- 1. Select the "Database" Tab, click on the "Reader" Tab below.
- 2. Highlight the Reader circuit you need to change then right click.
- 3. Select "Edit"

#### Figure 26: Changing a Single Reader Record



• When the record opens you can make your changes.

#### (You cannot change the User Circuit Number in a record.)

#### Figure 27: Reader Circuit

* Reader					<b></b> X
	Hardware Number Description	000-00-000 Use	er Circuit Number 00	0-00-000	
	Reader Type	4 Standard Reader	•	A/P From Area (Roll Call	Desc.) 0
	K/P Reader Type	6 - HUGHES 4-Bit Key	•	A/P To Area (Roll Call D	esc.) 0
	Alarm Type			Reset Antipassback After	0 mins
	Primary Display	1_ Secondary Dis	plays 0_ 0_	Display Maps 0	0_0_
Keycode Ti Reader bit f Threat Leve	format 42_ Doo	tem Code 0 or Relock Timer 5 or Held Timer 30_	Instruction Numb Door Alarm Priori Partition Levels		
REX Shunt / Shunt ar Shunt Of		Options ☑ Door Conta ☑ Clear Requi	ct Annunciate red Watch Tour	Time & Attend No Time & Time & Atte	Attendance
Shunt/Unk	ock Timezone 0_	REX mode	inlock 🔘 Shunt On	Time & Atb	endance Out endance In/Out
CCTV Cam	era No. 0 CCTV	ALARM No CC	TV Line No. 0_	Audit Printers	. 0_ 0_
Please click	edit icon to update t	he reader circuit inform	ation.		

Select edit the reader configuration window will unlock make the changes and then click Save.

# **Inputs Circuits**

• Input Circuits refer to the alarm or sensor points not directly associated to card readers that are programmed into the system. This section deals with the Input Circuit File.

### Overview

• Input Circuits are provided on the various field panels in the system for use with devices that monitor perimeters, property and spaces. Input Circuits require definition as to type, format, and location. There are also several different options available to provide various configurations

required by the end user. Inputs can be associated with Reader Circuits or have multiple related Output Circuits to perform various tasks in the system.

### **USER CIRCUIT**

• In the Receptors software, you define the **Hardware Circuit Number** (*a specific point on a specific panel*), to a User Circuit Number. Once this definition is made, all other programming is completed using the User Name. Access Levels, Commands, History files will always reference the User Circuit Number. The following circuit files are the only place you will reference a Hardware Circuit Number.

### **INPUT HARDWARE NUMBER**

• The input hardware circuits are specific ports on a given panel with a unique address. The numbers define the Inputs connected to the panels. The format of the Hardware address maps out the location of the Inputs in the system. The format of:

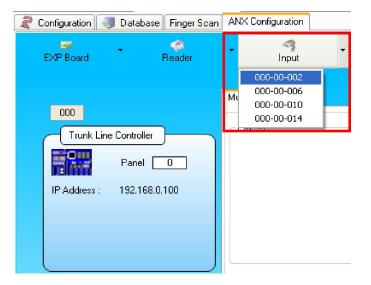
#### XXX-YY-ZZZ

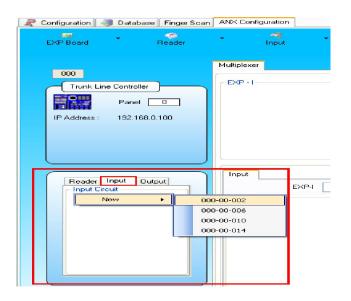
- Whereas:
  - XXX = Line No.: Is the Controller address (ANX or AN1)
  - YY = Panel Address:
    - § ANX, AN1 = Will always = 00
    - § EXP-I = (Sub panel for the ANX panel only) addresses = 16 31
    - § AN2 = (Sub panel for the AN1 panel only) addresses = 16 31
  - **ZZZ = Input Address:** The address of the Input points on the panels.

### **Adding a Input Circuit**

You can use any of these ways to add a Input circuit, Click on **Input** and the arrow at the right and selecting available Input Circuit from the list. Or Right click on the Input table.

#### Figure 28: Adding Input Circuit



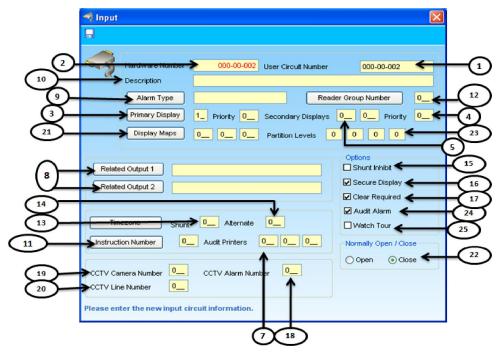


Click on Input and select an available Input Circuit

**OR** Right click on the Input table.

🔫 Input		×
	r	
~ 2	Hardware Number	000-00-002 User Circuit Number
	Description	
	Alarm Type	Reader Group Number 0_
	Primary Display	1_ Priority 0_ Secondary Displays 0_ 0_ Priority 0_
	Display Maps	0 0 Partition Levels 0 0 0 0
Relate Relate	Options         Shunt Inhibit         Secure Display         ✓ Clear Required         ✓ Audit Alarm         ✓ Watch Tour         Audit Printers         O	
CCTV Ca	mera Number 0	_ Audit Printers 0 0 0 0 Normally Open / Close
	ter the new input ci	cuit information.

Figure 30: Add a Circuit Field Names



### Add a Circuit window Field Names

• The following table is a listing of the Field Names for the Input Circuit that can be programmed for **ACP** or **AN1**:

Table 5:	Add a	Circuit	Field	Names	Descriptions
----------	-------	---------	-------	-------	--------------

Fie	ld Name	Description
1.)	User Circuit No.	11 character, Alpha/Numeric Name that identifies the Input to the system
2.)	Hardware Number	Formatted Numeric field that identifies the Input point on the panel.

Fie	ld Name	Description
3.)	Primary	Number of the Primary Workstation that activity on this Input is to be routed
- /	Display	to. Corresponds to the Display number in the System Control File
4.)	Priority	Allows a priority level for the Primary display. Entries from 0-9 with 9 being the highest priority.
5.)	Secondary	2 fields available, number of other Workstation(s) that activity on this Input is
ŕ	Displays	to be routed to. Corresponds to the Display number in the System Control File
6.)	Priority	Allows a priority level for the Secondary display(s). Entries from 0-9 with 9 being the highest priority.
7.)	Audit	3 fields available, identifies the printer that activity on this input is to be routed
<i>'</i> .)	Printers	to. Corresponds to the Printer number in the System Control File
8.)	Related	User Name of Output programmed in the Output file. This output will follow
	Output1 / 2	the alarm condition of the input, and turn on when in alarm condition. Note: Output Circuit will also turn off when Input Circuit is secure if Output Circuit mode is Mimic.
9.)	Alarm Type	Categorizes the type of Input. You can pull from the list or Add your own up to 16 characters Alpha/Numeric. These names will appear in the Alarm Type line in the Alarm detail window
10.)	Description	Description of Input up to 60 Alpha/Numeric characters. This description will appear in the list window as well as Command and Alarm detail sections
11.)	Instruction No.	Numeric entry. Corresponds to the Instruction number in the Instruction file. Alarm windows will display this instruction in the instruction window.
12.)	Reader	Numeric entry. Allows you to enter a Group number. When this input goes
,	Group No.	into alarm, the Reader group will activate. The Group must be manually re- locked. Relock is automatic if Relock Group Readers=1 is set in the Registry.
13.)	Time Zone	Numeric up to 3 digits. The system will shunt the Input based on the Time
,	Shunt	Zone entered here. Corresponds to the Time Zone number in the Time Zone file.
14.)	Time Zone	Numeric entry. Works in conjunction with the instruction set. When the Time
,	Alternate	Zone is active in this field, the instruction set will only display the alternate portion of the text.
15.)	Shunt Inhibit	Check box. If selected, the ability to shunt the alarm is disabled.
16.)	Secure	Check Box. If selected the Alarm window will display both the "ALARM" and
,	Display	"SECURE" conditions. If not selected, the Alarm window will display the "ALARM" condition only
17.)	Clear	Check Box Assigns a second step in the Alarm acknowledgment of this Input.
,	Required	
18.)	CCTV Alarm	Works in conjunction with the CCTV interface. Corresponds to the alarm
,	No.	number used by the various CCTV controllers. The system will send this number through the CCTV interface via Serial port when an alarm condition
		occurs on this Input. Also available in Monitor/Camera format.
19.)	CCTV	Works in conjunction with the CCTV interface. Corresponds to the camera number used by the various CCTV controllers. Through the CCTV interface
	Camera No.	the system will send this number via Serial port when an alarm condition
20.)	CCTV Line	occurs on this Input. Enables you to have two com ports to communicate to CCTV systems. Works
20.)	No.	in conjunction with the registry file.
21 \	Display	3 fields available, works in conjunction with the Map program. These numbers
(. ۱ م	Maps	correspond to the map number(s) this Input will display on.
22.)	Normally	Buttons set whether the Alarm condition of the input is in the opened or
Í	Open/Close	closed position PLEASE SEE the panel installation manuals for correct selection and operation of the end of line resistors
23.)	Partition	Works in conjunction with the User Level file, whereas a user who is logged
Í	Levels	on to the system with a partition level not equal to the Input partition level set here, will not see this Input in any edit or command lists. Partition levels
		selected are $0 - 4$ , whereas if set to 0 this Input will be in everyone's edit and
24 \	Audit Alarm	command lists. This allows transactions from this circuit to be written to history.
	Audit Alarm	
27.)		
	Watch Tour	Works in conjunction with the Watch Tour file. Defines this circuit as a Watchtour Circuit.

### **User Names**

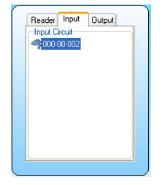
- Before you start data entry, take a few moments and complete some system planning. It is important to standardize on your naming conventions. If you plan ahead, you can make reporting and subsequent programming easier. Using User Circuit Numbers that start out the same such as "GATE\_\_\_\_", "IN\_\_\_\_", "DRCNT\_\_\_\_", "TMP\_\_\_\_", or "ZONE\_\_\_\_\_" will make it easier for you to Query later.
- The following is a sample of a finished Input Circuit window:

#### Figure 31: Sample Add a Circuit

🧠 Input						
	Hardware Number Description Alarm Type Primary Display Display Maps	000-00-002 Fire Input Fire Alarm 1_ Priority 0_ 0_ 0_ 0_	User Circuit N Secondary D Partition Lev	Reader C	000-00-002	0
Relate	d Output 1 000.c d Output 2 ezone Shunt ion Number 0_	_	0		Options Shunt Inhibit Secure Display Clear Required Audit Alarm Watch Tour Normally Open / Clo Open  O Clo	
CCTV Lin	mera Number 0 e Number 0 ter the new input ci	CCTV Alarm Num	iber 0		🔵 Open 💿 Clo:	26

• Once you've entered the desired data, you can press the 🔛 button to save the record.

#### Figure 32: RISG Input Circuit W/Input listed



### **Changing Records**

- 1. Select the "Database" Tab, click on the "Input" Tab below.
- 2. Highlight the Output circuit you need to change then right click.
- 3. Select "Edit"

#### Figure 33: Changing a Single Input Record

Input	Output	
	Edit	
	Remove	
_		
	Input cuit 0-002	Cuit 0-002 Edit

(You cannot change the User Circuit Number in a record.)

Figure 34: Change a Input Circuit

Inpu Edit	Input Circuit			
5	Hardware Number	041-00-002	lser Circuit Number	041-00-002
er	Description	Input no. 1		
	Alarm Type		Read	ler Group Number
	Primary Display	1_ Priority 0 S	econdary Displays	0 Priority 0
	Display Maps	0 0 0	Partition Levels	0 0 0
Relate	ed Output 1 ed Output 2 ezone Shunt ion Number 0_ mera Number 0_	Alternate     Audit Printers     CCTV Alarm Number		Options Stunt Inhibit Secure Display Clear Required Audit Alarm Watch Tour Normally Open / Close Open € Close

You can now edit the record Click saved when finish.

### Figure 35: Changing Input Records

🔿 Input				E
~	Hardware Number Description Alarm Type Primary Display Display Maps	000-00-002           Fire Input           Fire Alarm           1	Secondary Displays	000-00-002
Relate	ezone shunt	0-001		Options         Shurt Inhibit         ✓ Secure Display         ✓ Clear Required         ✓ Audit Alarm         ✓ Watch Tour
CCT∀ Ca CCT∀ Lin	ion Number 0 mera Number 0 le Number 0 ter the new input ci	CCTY Alarm Num		Normally Open / Close

Figure 36: Save Input records

🔫 Input				X
Save Inp	ut Circuit			
~3	Hardware Number	041-00-002	User Circuit Number	041-00-002
	Description	Input no. 1		

# Outputs

• Output Circuits refer to the Relays and open collector devices that are not directly associated to card readers and are programmed into the system. This section deals with the Output Circuit File.

## **Overview**

• Output Circuits are provided on the various field panels in the system for requirements to turn devices on/off or blink. They require definition as to what type, format, and location. There are also several different options available to provide various requirements by the system. Output Circuits can be associated to Input Circuits and Readers to perform various tasks in the system.

# **USER CIRCUIT**

• In the Receptors software, you define the **Hardware Circuit Number** (*a specific point on a specific panel*), to a User Name. Once this definition is made, all other programming is completed using the User Name. Access Levels, Commands, History files will always reference the User Name. The following circuit files are the only place you will reference a Hardware Circuit Number.

# **OUTPUTS HARDWARE CIRCUIT**

• The Hardware circuits are specific ports on a given panel with a unique address. The numbers define the Outputs connected to the panels. The format of the Hardware address maps out the location of the Outputs in the system. The format of:

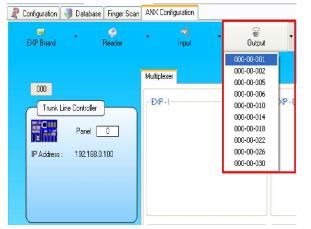
### XXX-YY-ZZZ

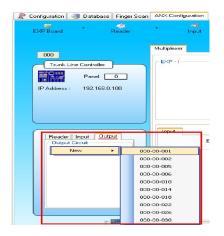
- Whereas:
  - XXX = Line No.: Is the Controller address (ANX or AN1)
  - YY = Panel Address:
    - § ANX, AN1 = Will always = 00
    - § EXP-0 = (Sub panel for the ANX panel only) addresses = 16 31
    - § AN4 = (Sub panel for the AN1 panel only) addresses = 16 31
  - **ZZZ** = **Output Address:** The address of the Output points on the panels.

# **Adding a Output Circuit**

You can use any of these ways to add an output circuit, Click on **Output** and the arrow at the right and selecting available Output Circuit from the list. Or Right click on the Output table.

#### Figure 37: Output Circuits records





Click on Output and select an available Output Circuit OR

Right click on the Output table.

#### Figure 38: RISG Output Circuit

Output		ur-5	×
Please ente	r the new output cir	cuit information.	
	Protect records and a		
Hardware Number	000-00-001	User Circuit Number	000-00-001
Description	Fire Alarm		
Output Mode	5. Latched		-
Alarm Type			
Related Outputs	s 1		
Related Outputs	s 2		
Display Maps	0 0 0	Partition Levels	0 0 0

	Sign Output	
1 3 4 5	Please click edit icon to update the output circuit information. Hardware Number O000-00-001 User Circuit Number Description Output Mode 5. Latched Alarm Type	2
6	Related Outputs 1	
7—	Display Maps 0_ 0_ Partition Levels 0 0 0 0	8

## Add a Circuit window Field Names

• The following table is a listing of the Field Names for the Output Circuit that can be programmed for **ANX** or **AN1**:

Table 6: Add a Circuit Field Names Descriptions

Field Name	Description
1). Hardware Number	Formatted numeric field that identifies the Output port.
<b>2).</b> User Circuit Number	11 character, Alpha/Numeric that identifies the Output to the system.
3). Description	Description of Output up to 60 characters Alpha/Numeric.
4). Output Mode	<ul> <li>State.</li> <li>See the following chart for modes:</li> <li>Mimic follows the input point it is related to: Alarm on-Output on</li> <li>Momentary Long turns on for 20 seconds.</li> <li>Momentary Short turns on for 3 seconds.</li> <li>Pulsed Mimic: see above.</li> <li>Latched turns on when commanded and must be manually turned off</li> <li>Pulsed Latched is the same as maintained except the output pulses (turns onoff-on).</li> <li>Note: Pulsed Latched, Pulsed Mimic, Momentary Short and Momentary Log types are only used on AN4 or RMC64 panel types.</li> </ul>
5). Alarm Type	Categorizes the Type of output.
6). Related Output1 / 2	Outputs can be linked together to active multiple outputs with a single input. Enter a programmed output User Name in this field.
7). Display Maps	3 fields available, works in conjunction with the Map program. These numbers correspond to the map number(s) this Output will display on.
8). Partition Levels	Works in conjunction with the <b>User Level</b> file, whereas a user who is logged on to the system with a partition level not equal to the Outputs partition level set here, will not see this Output in any edit or command lists. Partition levels

Field Name	Description
	selected are $0 - 4$ , whereas if set to 0 this Output will be in everyone's edit and command lists.

# Adding a Circuit

### **User Names**

- Before you start an entry, take a few moments and complete some system planning. It's important to standardize on your naming conventions. If you plan ahead, you can make reporting, and subsequent programming easier. Using User Circuit Numbers that start out the same such as "GATE\_\_\_\_\_", "OUT\_\_\_\_", "DOOR\_\_\_\_", or "ZONE\_\_\_\_\_" will make it easier for you to Query later.
- The following is a sample of a finished Add a Circuit window:

### Figure 40: Sample Add a Circuit

🕉 Output 🔀
🔚 🕅
Please click edit icon to update the output circuit information.
Hardware Number 000-00-001 User Circuit Number 000-00-001
Description Lobby - Output
Output Mode 5. Latched
Alarm Type
Related Outputs 1
Related Outputs 2
Display Maps 0_0_0_Partition Levels 0 0 0 0

• Once you've entered the desired data, you can press the 🔝 button to save the record.

### Figure 41: RISG Output Circuit W/Output listed

Circuit 00-001		
	000-00-001	

# **Changing Records**

1. Select the "Database" Tab, click on the "Output" Tab below.

2. Highlight the Output circuit you need to change then right click.

#### 3. Select "Edit"

#### Figure 42: Changing a Single Output Record

Reader Inpu Output Circuit	
	Edit
	Remove

• When the record opens you can make your changes.

#### (You cannot change the User Circuit Number in a record.)

Figure 43: Change Output Circuit

🏐 Output			×
🖬 🕅			
Please clic	k editicon to update	the output circuit ir	nformation.
Hardware Number	000-00-001	User Circuit Number	000-00-001
Description	Fire Alarm		
Output Mode	5. Latched		~
Alarm Type			
Related Output:	s1		
Related Output:	s 2		
Display Maps	0 0 0	Partition Levels	

## **Copying Records**

- As explained in the **Standard Conventions** section, you can copy data from one record to another. To copy a record, select the source using the same method as described above. Instead of double-clicking, or selecting **Open**, select **New** or you can do a right click and select **Add**.
- The Add a Circuit screen will open and display the first record in the RIS Output Circuits [Ockt1] window with the selected data filled in. At this point you can change User and Hardware number field to the desired Output along with any other fields you need to change. When you save this record it will save as a new document in the table.

# **Sub-Controller Multiplexer Table**

Multiplexer Port is the configuration file for the Expansion Cards (EXP-R's, EXP-I's, EXP-O's AN2's, AN5's and AN4's) that are connected to a Controller. This file becomes the Port Map for the Expansion card connected to the controller it identifies the types and addresses of the Multiplexer panels. The following table outlines which Multiplexers can be connected to the ANX controller panel

• **MUX Table:** The port map is downloaded to the controller so that the Host knows which Multiplexers are to be polled by the Controller

Controller	Multiplexers that can be Connected
ANX	EXP-I, EXP-O, EXP-R
AN1	AN2, AN4, AN5

## Adding a Sub-Controller and Multiplexer

### **Programming the EXP Board**

There are a total of 31 Multiplexers that can be connected to a ANX Controller.

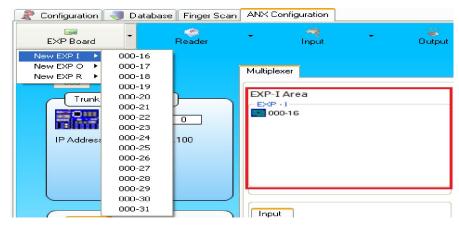
- 15 can be **EXP-R** (expansion 2 Reader boards)
- 16 can be a combination of **EXP-I** and **EXP-O** or a combination of the two together to equal a total of 16 boards.

## Adding a EXP-I

**EXP-I**: Is an ANX Input expansion board. You can select the **EXP-I** numbers by clicking on them.

- 1. Click on the EXP Board button and choose EXP-O
- 2. Click on the EXP-O address you would like to add
- 3. Once you have selected the EXP-O it will appear in the Multiplexer/ EXP-O

#### Figure 44: EXP-I Board



- In the **EXP-I** Pull down box select the Multiplexer that you have added.
- Right-Click in the Input circuit box, Click on New and choose the Inputs you want to add. (Refer to Input Circuit Section)

**Figure 45: Adding Input Circuits** 

ster Personnel	Badging	Hardw	vare Configurat	ion Access	Command	Map Design	User-Passkey I	evels				
Configuration	J Dat	abase	Finger Scan	ANX Config	uration							
EXP Board	•		Reader	•	A Input	•	e Output	* Re	× emove	C Return To Main Pi	nel	2 Config
000				Multiplexer								
IP Addree			0	EXP • 1			EXP -			EXF	- R 00-01	
				Input				0-16-000			ider Input	
Rea	er Input der Circuit 10-00-000	Outp	ut	L	C EXP-	L	• 00	0-16-001 0-16-002 0-16-003	-0 []	•	ader Circuit	Output EXP-R
				C	=>L	New	000	0-16-004 0-16-005 0-16-006				
							000	0-16-007 0-16-008 0-16-009				
							00	0-16-009 0-16-010 0-16-011				
								0-16-012				

## Adding a EXP-O

**EXP-O**: Is the ANX Output expansion board. You can select the **EXP-O** numbers by click on them Click on the **EXP Board** button and choose **EXP-O**.

- 1) Click on the EXP Board button and choose EXP-O
- 2) Click on the EXP-O address you would like to add
- 3) Once you have selected the EXP-O it will appear in the Multiplexer/ EXP-O Box
- The following is how the Panel Type window should look with the above data entered in:

#### Figure 46: Adding EXP-O

Master Personnel    I	Badging H	Hardware Configu	ration Ac	cess Comma	nd Map De	sign User-Pas	skey Levels		
🦧 Configuration	🦪 Datab	base Finger Sca	n ANX C	onfiguration					
EXP Board	-	) Reader	T	- 🧐 Input	÷	ි Output	ā	X Remove	( Return To
New EXP I 🕨									
New EXP O →	000-16		Multiple	uuar .					
New EXP R 🕨	000-17		maidpre	SAGI		Ð	P-O Area	a	
Contract of	000-18							a	
Trunk	000-19		EXP	-1			EXP - 0		
	000-20	2					000-17		
	000-21	0							
	000-22								
IP Address	000-23	100							
	000-24								
	000-25								
	000-26								
	000-27								
	000-28								
	000-29								
	000-30			ł			Output		
Reade	000-31	put	I Inpu				output		

- In the **EXP-O** Pull down box select the Multiplexer that you have added.
- Right-Click in the **Output circuit box**, Click on **New** and choose the Inputs you want to add. (Refer to Output Circuit Section)

**Figure 47: Adding Output Circuits** 

ter Personnel Badgin	g Hardware Configur	ation Access	Command	Map Design	User-Passkey Levels				
Configuration	atabase Finger Sca	ANX Config	uration						
EXP Board	Reader		Input	•	Output	X Remove	Return To Main I	A Panel Con	
000		Multiplexer							
Trunk Line C	ontroller	EXP - 1			EXP - 0			(P - R (000-01	
Reader Inpu Reader Crcu © 000-00-00	t	Input Input Cr	EXP-		Output     Output     Output Cross	EXP-O O	0-17	>000-17-000 000-17-001 000-17-002 000-17-003 000-17-004	P-R
					(		New F	000-17-004 000-17-005 000-17-006 000-17-008 000-17-009 000-17-010	
	It was and							000-17-011	

## Adding a EXP-R

**EXP-R**: Is the ANX Reader expansion board. You can select the **EXP-R** numbers by click on them Click on the **EXP Board** button and choose **EXP-R**.

- 1) Click on the EXP Board button and choose EXP-R
- 2) Click on the EXP-R address you would like to add
- 3) Once you have selected the EXP-R it will appear in the Multiplexer/ EXP-R Box
- The following is how the Panel Type window should look with the above data entered in:

#### Figure 48: Adding EXP-R

Master Personnel	Badging Ha	ardware Configural	tion Access	Command	Map Design	User-Pa	asskey Levels			
R Configuration	Jataba	ise Finger Scan	ANX Config	juration						
EXP Board	-	Reader	÷		(† 1)	e Output	-	X Remove	💽 Return To Main Panel	🧟 Config
New EXP I F New EXP O F		- 1	Multiplexer	1						
New EXP R  Trunk IP Address	000-04 000-05 000-06	0.100	~EXP-I-				- EXP • 0		- EXP · R 000-01	
Reade	000-12 000-13 000-14	put	Input				Output		Reader	nput Output

- In the **EXP-O** Pull down box select the Multiplexer that you have added.
- Right-Click in the **Output circuit box**, Click on **New** and choose the Inputs you want to add. (Refer to Output Circuit Section)

#### Figure 49: EXP-R

		cess Command Map Design User-	Passkey Levels	
Configuration J Databas	e Finger Scan ANX C	input Output	- 💥 Remove Return To l	Nan Panel Config
000 Trank Line Controlle Panel   IP Address : 192.168		·]	EXP -0	EXP - R
Reader Input OD Reader Crout © 000-00-000		EXP-I	Output EXP-O Output Circuit @ 000-17:000	Resder         Input         Output           DXP-R         000-01           Resder Circut         000-01           New         000-01

## **Highlight EXP-R**

- **1.)** Highlight the Multiplexer that you have added.
- **2.)** Click the arrow that appears below next to the address and choose the Reader you want to add. (Refer to Reader Circuit Section).
- 3.) You can also add Inputs and Outputs to this board
- The following is how the Panel Type window should look with the above data entered in:

#### Figure 50: Example Panel Type window

RISG Administrator version 5.4.1.6 [win7] [	erver]	Papers, April 10, 2020, Arr. 7 Magar	
Master Personnel Badging Hardware Configurat	ion Access Command Map Design User	-Passkey Levels	
Representation Representatio Representation Representation Representation Represe	ANX Configuration		
EXP Board Reader	🔹 🧖 🔹 觉 Input Outpu	t Remove Return To	ि 🦉 Main Panel Config
000 Trunk Line Controller Panel 0 IP Address : 192.168.0.100	Multiplexer EXP - I 000-16	EXP - 0	- EXP - R
Reader Input Output Reader Circuit © 000-00-000	Input EXP-I Input Crcut	Output EXP-0	Reader Input Output EXP-R Reader Circuit © 000-01-000 © 000-01-004
EXP4			

# **Data Format**

• The Data Formats are for creating special card data formats for use on card readers attached to RISG AN1 or ANX Series of Access Control Panels

Do not attempt to use data formats unless you are thoroughly familiar with card data protocols.

### **Data Entry**

- First, you must launch the **Data Format** file.
- Click on Admin at the top of RISG Security Management System window and select Data Format from the drop down menu.
- After selecting the **Data Format** module, the **Data Formats** window will appear:

#### Figure 51: Data Format entry screen

Data Format No.	Description		
34 35 42	HID 34 Bit Wiegand HID 35 Bit Wiegand RISG 42 Bit		
•			
Data For			
Format N Description	umber		
Format N	on	<b>T</b>	
Format N Description Total Date	on	<b>-</b>	
Format N Descriptiv Total Dat System C	on Bits Bit Pattern	<b>-</b>	
Format N Descriptiv Total Dat System C	on Bits Bit Pattern Site Start Bit S	Ţ	

• To Create a data format click on new icon. The List Data Format(s) window will be active only at this time.

#### Figure 52: Data Format entry screen

Data Format No.	Description	
34	HID 34 Bit Wiegand	
35	HID 35 Bit Wiegand	
42	RISG 42 Bit	

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete a Data Format.

### **Building a Data Format**

Because of the design of the module, Data Formats are programmed in a group:

	Data Format	
õ	Description	
G-	Total Data Bits Bit Pattern	-(4)
õ–	System Code : Start Bit	- <b>6</b>
<u> </u>	System Card : Start Bit End Bit	-
8	Sustem Code	

### **Field Names**

The Data Format Module contains the following field names:

- **1). Data Format Number:** The number assigned to this Data Format. This is the number used to attach the Data Format to a reader circuit record. The Format number can be from 1 to 999.
- 2). Description: Optional text description. Maximum of 20 characters.
- 3). Total Data Bits: Total number of data bits read from the card.
- 4). Bit Pattern: Type of protocol used at reader, i.e., 26 bit Weigand, magnetic stripe, etc.
- 5). System Code Start Bit: Location of the start bit of the System Code
- 6). System Code End Bit: Location of the System Code end bit.
- 7). Card Data Start Bit: Location of the start bit of the card data
- 8). Card Data End Bit: Location of the Card Data end bit.
- 9). System Code -

### Example

• In the following example, we're going to use a typical magnetic stripe card:

On the card is a standard ABA encoded data string.

Total Number of bits= 16

### 0001234567890153

Bits 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Card Number = 9015Start Bit = 2End Bit = 5System Code = 1234Start Bit = 10End Bit = 13

As shown above, you can see the Card Number to be made up of the  $2^{nd}$  through the  $5^{th}$  bit. The System Code built from the  $10^{th}$  to the  $13^{th}$  bit.

• In the following example, we're going to use a typical HID Cporation 1000 Format card that has 34 bit Wiegand, 2 parity bits, 16 site code bits, and 16 card bits.

• In the following example, we're going to use a typical HID Corporation 1000 Format card that has 37 bit Wiegand, 2 parity bits, 16 site code bits, and 19 card bits.

Detail of RISG Card	
Total data bit 42	Bit pattern #2-34 Bit Weigand
System code start bit 0	System code end bit 0
System data start bit 2	System data end bit 41
Total data bit 42	Bit pattern #2-34 Bit Weigand
System code start bit 0	System code end bit 0
System data start bit 2	System data end bit 41

### **Example for RISG 42-Bit Card Information**

#### Figure 12: Create a Data Format

10L 01 10	Data Format Format Number 42_			
	Description RISG	42 Bit		
	Total Data Bits	42	Bit Pattern	2-34 BIT WEIGAN
	System Code : Start Bit	0	End Bit	0
	System Card : Start Bit	2	End Bit	41
	System Code	0		

# **Group Command**

• Group Commands allow you to build a group of Reader Circuits. After the group is built you can give this group Lock, Unlock or Lock Out commands from the Alarm Display. This will permit you to Lock, Unlock or Lock Out groups of Readers with a single command instead of calling each Reader individually. Additionally, you can assign an Input Circuit to the Reader Group and unlock all of the reader doors in that group by activating the Input Circuit.

## **Data Entry**

- First, you must launch the Group Reader module. Click on Admin from the top of RISG Security Management System.
- Select Administrator. Go to Command tab and click on "Group Reader"
- After selecting the Group Reader module, the List a Group Reader and RISG Reader Groups windows will appear.

Figure 13: List a Group File(s)

Group Reader Group Input Group Output Instruction Transaction	
	=::Group Reader List ::=
Group No.	Number Description Shunt Timezo Last Changed
Description	
Reader Circuit Group Comman	rd Circuit
000-00-000	
Secure Mode	
No Action     Lock	
O Lockout	
O Unlock	
Add>>	
Add>>	
<< Remove	
(C Heilibre	
Alarm Mode	
No Action     Lock	
O Lockout	
Unlock	
C	
Add	Edit Delete Save Cancel Print Help
Last Change By	

• The List a Group Files(s) window will be active only at this time. If you leave the Please enter a group file(s) box blank and click the OK button, all of the programmed data formats (if any) will list in the RIS Reader Groups – [Gcmd1] Window.

Figure 14: RISG Reader Groups - [Gcmd1]

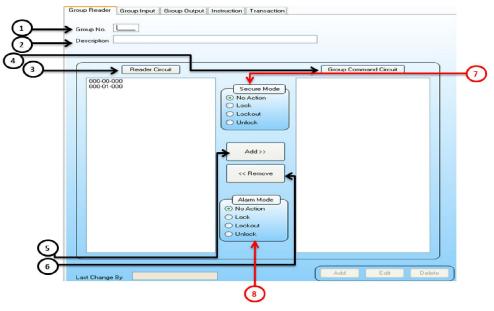
= : : Group Reader List : : =						
	Number	Description	Shunt Timezo Last Changed			
۶.	1	Group Reader	0	Admin		

• At this point, you can Add, Change, View, or Delete a Reader Group.

## Adding a Reader Group

• You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a new record, the **Add a Group File** window will appear:

Figure 15: Add a Group File



### **Field Names**

- **1.)** Group Number: The User definable number to reference the programmed group.
- 2.) Description: Optional description up to 70 characters to describe the group.
- 3.) Reader Circuits: List of readers programmed in the database and available for this group.
- 4.) Group Command Circuits: List of readers selected for this group.
- 5.) Add Button: When you select a reader in the Reader Circuit section, clicking this button will add it to the Group Command Circuits section.
- 6.) Remove Button: When you select a reader in the Group Command Circuits, clicking this button will remove the reader from the Group Command Circuits section.
- 7.) Secure Mode
  - No Action: No automatic action will be taken by the system.
  - Lock: When a programmed input goes into Alarm the door that these readers are installed at will Lock
  - Lockout: When a programmed input goes into Alarm these readers are installed at will be Locked Out (Will not read any cards).
  - Unlock: When a programmed input goes into Alarm the door that these readers are installed at will Unlock
  - Secure Mode: Readers can be commanded automatically based on the mode of a programmed Input Circuit. In this option if a programmed input goes Secure the selected readers will perform the function selected (Only One Function can be selected)
  - No Action: No automatic action will be taken by the system.
  - Lock: When a programmed input goes Secure the door that these readers are installed at will Lock
  - Lockout: When a programmed input goes Secure these readers are installed at will be Locked Out (Will not read any cards).
  - Unlock: When a programmed
- 8.) Secure Mode: Readers can be commanded automatically based on the mode of a programmed Input Circuit. In this option if a programmed input goes Secure the selected readers will perform the function selected (Only One Function can be selected)
  - **No Action:** No automatic action will be taken by the system.
  - Lock: When a programmed input goes Secure the door that these readers are installed at will Lock.
  - Lockout: When a programmed input goes Secure these readers are installed at will be Locked Out (Will not read any cards).

Unlock: When a programmed input goes Secure the door that these readers are installed at will Unlock.

### **Creating a Reader Group**

- Enter the group number and if desired enter a description up to 70 characters
- Select the readers from the Reader Circuits section and click the Add button and it will appear in the Group Command Circuits section. Repeat this step until you have all of the desired readers in the Group Command.
- Once you've entered the desired data, you can press the **Save** button to save the record. The window will appear showing the reader group created.

# **Group Shunt**

Group Shunt provides a means with which you can group Input Circuits together for the purpose of enabling/disabling them by Manual command on a Workstation or automatically via a Time Zone.

## **Data Entry**

- First you must launch the Group Input module. Click on Admin from the top of RISG Security Management System and then select Administrator. Go to Command tab and click on "Group Input".
- After selecting the Group Input module, the List an Input Group Input window will appear:

#### Figure 16: List a Input Group Shunt

	Dutput Instruction Transaction		=::Group Input List::=		
Description				n Shunt Timezo Last Changed	
Input Circuit	Gri	oup Shunt Circuit			
	Add>>				
	<< Remove				
		Add Edit	Delete	ave Cancel	Print Help

• The List an Input Group Input window will be active only at this time.

#### **Figure 17: RISG Input Group Shunt**

= : : Group Input List : : =						
	Number	Description	Shunt Timezo	Last Changed		
۲.	1	Group Input no	1	Admin		

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, or Delete a Group Input.

### **Building a Group Shunt**

Because of the design of the module, Group Shunts are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a **New** record, the **Add an Input Group Shunt** window will appear:

Group Reader Group	Shunt Timezone No.		4
3 Input Circuit	Add >>	Group Shunt Circuit	

### **Field Names**

The Group Shunt Module contains the following field names:

- **1). Group No.:** This is the number assigned to this Group Shunt Record, and is used, along with the Description to identify the Group Shunt in Status when it is in effect.
- **2). Description:** This field is for a text description of the Group Shunt Record. This description, along with the Group No., is displayed when this group is in effect 65 alphanumeric characters maximum.
- **3). Input Circuits:** These are the Input Circuits available to be assigned into Group Shunt Records.
- **4). Shunt Time Zone No.:** This is the number of a Time Zone record that can be used to automatically disable this Group during the time values set in this Time Zone
- **5). Group Shunt Circuits:** These are the Input Circuits that are members of this Group Shunt Record.
- Sample of a completed Group Shunt Record:

#### Figure 19: Sample Input Group Shunt

Description Ground Flo	or Perimeter	Group Shunt Circuit
DOOR 21 E DOOR 21 W DOOR 21 W DOOR 21 W ROOM 20 ROOM 2	Add >> << Remove	W. STAIRS RECEPTION E. STAIRS

# **Group Output**

Group Output provides a means with which you can group Output Circuits together for the purpose of turning them on or off by manual command from a Workstation.

### **Data Entry**

- First you must launch the Group Output. To do this click on Admin from the top of RISG Security Management System and then select Administrator.
- Then go to **Command** tab and click **Group Output**.
- After selecting the Group Output module, the List a Group Output window will appear:

### Figure 20: List a Group File

up Reader Group Input Group Oulput Instructio	Transacauti	
roup No.	Output Circuit	Group Dutput Circuit
		Add>>
		< Remove
	ro Last Changed	
	so Cast Changed	
	so Last Changed	
	ro Last Changed	
	ro Last Changed	
	so Last Changed	
=::Group Output List :: = Number Description Shunt Times	so Last Changed	

• The List a Group File window will be active only at this time.

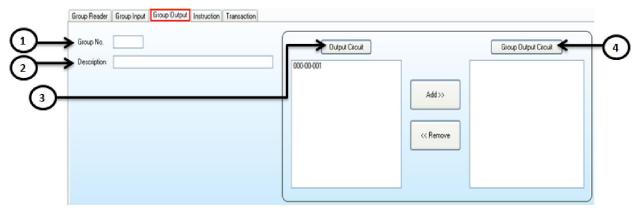
#### Figure 21: RISG Group Output

=:	= : : Group Output List : : =							
	Number	Description	Shunt Timezo Last Changed					
	1	Group Output	0	Admin				

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, or Delete a Group Output record.

### **Building a Group Output**

Because of the design of the module, Group Outputs are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a **New** record, the **Add a Group File** window will appear:



### **Field Names**

The Group Output Module contains the following field names:

- **1). Group number:** This is the number assigned to this Group Output Record, and is used, along with the Description to identify the Group Output in Status when this Group is activated.
- **2). Description:** This field is for a text description of the Group Output Record. This description, along with the Group No., is displayed in Status when this group is activated. 70 Alphanumeric characters maximum.
- **3). Output Circuits:** These are the Output Circuits available to be assigned to Group Output Records.
- **4).** Group Output Circuits: These are the Output Circuits that are members of this Group Output Record.
- Sample of a completed Group Output Record:

#### Figure 23: Sample Group Output

Group Reader Group Input Group Output Instruction Transaction			
Group No. 1	Output Circuit		Group Output Circuit
Description 1st Floor Dutput Group	ALLO ADDRES CLEV ADAP OUTPUT 2.A OUTPUT 2.A OUTPUT 2.E OUTPUT 2.E OUTPUT 2.E OUTPUT 2.E OUTPUT 2.E SHIEL LAMP TOURILAMP TOURILAMP TOURISUT2 TOURIOUT2 TOURIOUT2	Add>>	EA ONEA A ONEA A ONEA TPUT 1A TPUT 18 TPUT 1C
= : : Group Output List : : = Number Description Shunt Timezo Last Changed			
Last Change By	Add Edit Delete	Save Cancel	Print Help

### **Copying Records**

• You can copy from one Group Output to the next by doing any of the following:

- Ø Highlight the Group Output you want to copy from and Select **Open**, and the **Change a record** window will appear. **OR**
- Ø Highlight the Group Output you want to copy from and Select **New** and the **Add a record** window will appear. **OR**
- Ø Right click on the Group Output you want to copy from and select **Add** from the pop down menu and the **Add a record** window will appear.
- Make sure to change the **Group Output Number**, as well as the data entries, and press the **OK** button.
- The edited Group Output will be listed in the **RIS Group Outputs [Gmd1] window** as a new record.

# **Elevator Output**

- Elevator Output is part of the optional feature, Elevator Control that allows the control of multiple elevators securing multiple floors. This feature is split into two modules:
  - Ø Elevator **Outputs**, controls the Floors that can be accessed.

Please Note - Outputs for floors must first be programmed in the Output Circuit File prior to proceeding with Elevator Output (Refer to the Output Circuit section of this manual).

Ø Elevator **Readers** controls the Elevators.

Please Note - Readers for elevators must first be programmed in the Reader Circuit File prior to proceeding with Elevator Output (Refer to the Reader Circuit section of this manual).

### **Overview**

- Using RISG EXP-O or AN4 output panel (Momentary Short (Output on for 6 seconds)) function, the Elevator Output module allows you to access specific floors, using Elevator card readers, based on Access Level criteria assigned to Master Personnel records. This is accomplished by assigning a Reader as an elevator Reader to each elevator and assigning an Output for each floor to be accessed when the Reader is badged at that particular Elevator.
- The floors are divided into Elevator Access Levels, and the Elevator Access Level is assigned to a person Access
- Card record in the Master Personnel File. As an example:

Elevator Access 1 = Floors 1, 2, and 3 Elevator Access 2 = Floors 1, and 3 Elevator Access 3 = Floors 2, and 3

- These Access Levels correspond to the outputs designated for these floors.
- When an Elevator Reader is badged and access is granted, the outputs assigned to that Reader will turn on corresponding to the Elevator Access of the card. This in turn will allow the user to select the correct floor and move the elevator.

# Data Entry

- First, you must launch the Elevator Output module.
- Click on Admin from the top of RISG Security Management System and then select Administrator.

- Click on Access Level and then Elevator Control.
- Select Elevator Output tab
- After selecting the Elevator Output module, the List records and RISG Elevator Floor Outputs windows will appear.

#### Figure 24: List records

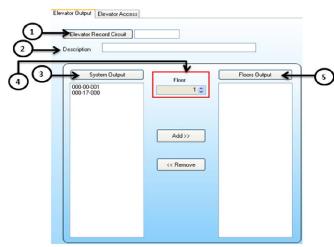
Elevator Record Circuit			=::Elevator Output List :: = Elevator Record Circuit Description	Last Changed By
System Output 000-00-001	Floor	Floors Dutput		
	Add >>			
	<< Remove			

• The List records window will be active only at this time.

#### Figure 25: RISG Elevator Floor Outputs – [elot1]

= : : Elevator Output List : : =		
Elevator Record Circuit	Description	Last Changed By
000-00-000	E1	Admin

- At this point, you can Add, Edit, Save or Delete a record.
- You can click on "Add" button. Once you request to enter a new record, the new record window will enable:



#### Figure 26: Add a record

### **Field Names**

- 1.) Elevator Reader Circuit: The User Name of the Reader that Corresponds to this elevator.
- 2.) Description: The description of this Elevator Output.
- 3.) System Output: The Output List from the Output Circuit file.
- 4.) Floor: The designated floor that you are assigning this Output to.
- 5.) Floors Outputs: The assigned Output that controls this floor.

# Adding a Record

- Click on the **Select Reader** button and select the reader that is programmed for this Elevator.
- Enter the description for this circuit in the **Description** box.
- Select the desired floor in the **Floor** box either by typing it in or by using the **Up/Down** arrows.
- Select the desired **Output** circuit in the **Systems Output** box and click the **new** button and it will be displayed in the **Assigned Floors/Outputs** box along with the floor number. If you made an error and you want to remove what was added simply highlight the **Output/Floor** in the **Assigned Floors/Outputs** box and click the **Remove** button.
- When you have entered all of the desired data, click the Save button.

# Changing Record(s)

• To change a record you can right click the record that you desire to change and select Change from the menu and the Change a record 1 of 1 will appear:

#### Figure 27: Change a record 1 of 1

Elevator Output Elevator Access			
Elevator Record Circuit 000-	00-000		
Description e1			
System Output	Floor	Flo	ors Output
000-00-001	2 📚	Floor : 2	000-00-001
	<< Remove		

- At this point you can make the necessary changes and when you are ready click the OK button and the changes will be saved and you will be returned to the **RISG Elevator Floor Outputs**
- •
- 1. To change a record you can click or highlight the desire record. Click on Edit button from the menu and the change a record 1 of 1 will appear:
- 2. At this point you can make the necessary changes and when you are ready click the **Save** button and the changes will be saved and you will be returned to the **RISG Elevator Floor Outputs**

	= : : Elevator Output Lis	t::=	
	Elevator Record Ci		Last Changed By
	000-00-000	e1	Admin
Floors Output	Highlight	the selected Elev	ator Output List
Floor : 2 FI500-00-001			
Then select on ed	, dit button		
Add	Delete	Save Cancel	Print Help

5). At this point if you select Edit, you will be returned to the next record in sequence...

# **Deleting Record(s)**

- Follow the procedures of **Changing Record(s)** records to delete records. Instead of selection from the list and click on Delete button.
- However, be careful when selecting records to delete that they are the records you want to delete. Deleting records cannot be recovered. If you make a mistake, you will need to create the record again.

# Viewing Record(s)

• You cannot change records when Viewing records. Follow the procedures for Adding Record(s) to View records.

## **Elevator Access**

• Elevator Access is an optional feature that allows access to multiple floors from a particular elevator.

## Overview

- Elevator Access works in conjunction with the **Master Personnel** file as an Elevator Access Level.
- The floors are divided into Elevator Access Levels, and the Elevator Access Level is assigned to a person Access Card record in the Master Personnel File. As an example: Elevator Access 1 = Floors 1,2, and 3 Elevator Access 2 = Floors 1, and 3 Elevator Access 3 = Floors 2, and 3
- These Access Levels correspond to the outputs designated for these floors in the **Elevator Output** module.

# Data Entry

- First, you must launch the Elevator Output module.
- Click on Admin from the top of RISG Security Management System and then select Administrator.

- Click on Access Level and then Elevator Control.
- Select Elevator Access tab.

#### Figure 29: List records

vator Access Level No.	Check All Uncheck All	
scription	Check         Check <th< td=""><td>oor 49         Floor 57           oor 50         Floor 58           oor 51         Floor 59           oor 52         Floor 60           oor 53         Floor 61           oor 54         Floor 62</td></th<>	oor 49         Floor 57           oor 50         Floor 58           oor 51         Floor 59           oor 52         Floor 60           oor 53         Floor 61           oor 54         Floor 62
	Floor 8 Floor 16 Floor 24 Floor 32 Floor 40 Floor 48 F	
: : Elevator Access List : : = Elevator Access Level Nu Description	Map 1 Map 2 Map 3 Map 4	Map 5

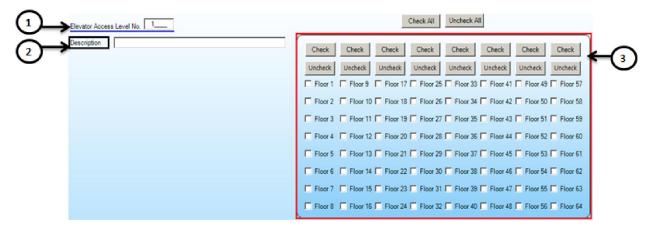
• The list of Elevator Access will be shown after Elevator Access Tab is selected

### Figure 30: RISG Elevator Access Level – [elal1]

= :	: :: Elevator Access List :: =						
	Elevator Access Level Nu	Description	Map 1	Map 2	Map 3	Map 4	Map 5
<u>►</u>	1	Elevator Access Level 1	255	0	255	255	255
I .							
I							
I .							
I .							
4							F

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete a record:

#### Figure 31: Add a record



### **Field Names**

- **1.) Elevator Access Level Number:** The number that will be entered in the Master Personnel File that identifies the floors that can be accessed.
- **2.) Description:** The description of this Elevator Access Level. 30 alphanumeric characters maximum.
- 3.) Floors that can be accessed at this Elevator Access Level.

# Adding a Record

- Enter the desired number that will identify this Elevator Access Level in the Elevator Access Level Number box.
- Enter the description for this level in the **Description** box.
- Select the desired floor by placing a check mark beside the floor number.
- Once you've entered the desired data, you can press the Save button to save the record. The RISG Elevator Access window will appear showing the new record just created.

#### Figure 32: RISG Elevator Access – [elal1]

=	:: Elevator Access List :: =	:					
	Elevator Access Level Nu	I Description	Map 1	Map 2	Map 3	Map 4	Map 5
Þ	1	East Wing	255	0	255	255	255
4							Þ

## **Changing Records**

- To change existing records, in the **Elevator Access** highlight the desired records
- Then select Edit

Figure 33: Changing a Single Elevator Access Level No. Record

= : : Elevator Access List : :	=					
Elevator Access Level N	u Description	Map 1	Map 2	Map 3	Map 4	Map 5
▶ 1	East Wing	255	0	255	255	255
			1			
						Þ
0 dania				<u> </u>		
Last Change By Admin		Add Edit	Delete	Save Cancel	Print Help	

• When the record opens, the Change a Record 1 of 1 window will appear:

(You cannot change the Elevator Access Number in a record.)

Figure 34: Change a record 1 of 1

Elevator Access Level No. 1	Check All Uncheck All
Description East Wing	Check         Uncheck         Unc
	Image: Proof 4       Image: Proof 20       Image: Proof 28       Image: Proof 36       Image: Proof 52       Image: Proof 60         Image: Proof 5       Image: Proof 12       Image: Proof 21       Image: Proof 23       Image: Proof 37       Image: Proof 53       Image: Proof 60         Image: Proof 5       Image: Proof 14       Image: Proof 21       Image: Proof 23       Image: Proof 73       Image: Proof 64       Image: Proof 64

- At this point you can make the necessary changes and when you are ready click the Save button and the changes will be saved and you will be returned to the **RISG Elevator Access**.
  - 1). Once you've highlighted them, select the **Open** from the <u>File</u> menu or you can do a right click on one of the highlighted records and select change.
  - 2). Once you have selected the way to open the records, The Change a record <u>#</u> of <u>#</u> window will open and display the first record in the RISG Elevator Access [elal1] window with the selected data filled in. On the menu bar, <u># of #</u> reflects the number of the record in the group of the overall total of records selected to change. At this point you can change the Description and the Assigned Floors only. The Entry screen will sequence through all of the records. You just have to make the necessary changes and select OK.
  - **3).** If you cancel a record, the **elal** window will appear and ask you if you want to abandon the editing.

Figure 35: To Save record

= : :	: Elevator Access List : : =					
	Elevator Access Level Nu Description	Map 1	Map 2	Map 3	Map 4	Map 5
•	1 East Wing	255	0	255	255	0
<						>
	Highlight the	selected Elevator Acc	ess then after making	some changes, hit o	n SAVE button to save	the settings.
Las	t Change By Admin	Add Ed		Save Cancel	Print Hel	

- 6). At this point if you answer **save**, you will be returned to the next record in sequence.
- **7).** If the records you are changing are not in sequential order, you can highlight the first record.
- 8). Follow the procedure starting at number 1.

## **Deleting Record(s)**

• Highlight the selected record then hit on Delete button

# Viewing Record(s)

• Highlight the selected record then you can view the records settings

# Dial Up

Dial Up is a feature that allows remote Trunk Lines to communicate with the Host via dial up modems and phone lines. Database can be downloaded to the remote controllers or the remote controllers can dial the Host to report Alarm and Access transactions.

### Data Entry

- First, you must launch the **Dial Up** file
- Click on Admin at the top of RISG Security Management System window and select Data
- Format from the drop down menu.
- After selecting the Dial Up module, the Dial Up window will appear

#### Figure 36: RISG Dial up

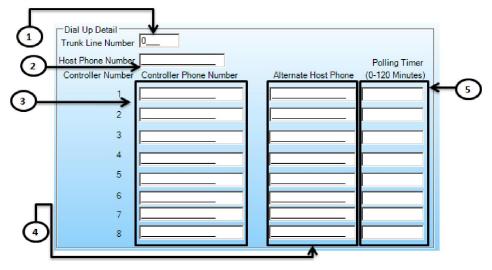
DIAL UP		
Address Number	Phone	
1	913015551212	

• At this point, you can Add, Change, View, or Delete a Dial Up record.

### **Building a Dial Up Record**

- Add a Dial Up
- Click on new icon on the Top of Dial Up window go to Dial Up information area to put new Dial Up information:

#### Figure 37: Add a Record



### **Field Names**

The Dial Up Module contains the following field names:

- **1). Trunk Line No.:** Panel Trunk Line number for this Dial up record. Remember to set the Trunk Line in the System Control File to Dial-Up (9600).
- 2). Host Phone No.: Telephone number for the modem that the host uses to dial the panels. Also the number that the remote panels dial to report transactions to the Host
- **3).** Panel Phone No.: Telephone number for the modem at the panels. This is the number that the Host dials for a panel connection.
- **4).** Alternate Host Phone: This number is used by the panels to dial the Host should the primary host number become unavailable.
- **5). Polling Timer:** Allows adjustment of the polling time to compensate for signal loss on a phone line. Time is in minutes.

• Sample of a completed Dial Up Record:

#### Figure 38: Sample Dial Up Record

Dial Up Detail Trunk Line Number	0		
Host Phone Number	91301555122		Polling Timer
Controller Number	Controller Phone Number	Alternate Host Phone	(0-120 Minutes)
1	91301551234	913015559876	5
2	913015557432	913015559876	5
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			

### **Copying Records**

- You can copy from one Dial Up record to the next by doing any of the following:
  - Ø Highlight the Dial Up record you want to copy from and Select **Open**, and the **Change a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Highlight the Dial Up record you want to copy from and Select New and the Add a record window will appear. OR
  - Ø Right click on the Dial Up record you want to copy from and select **Add** from the pull down menu and the **Add a record** window will appear.
- Make sure to change the **Trunk Line Number**, as well as the data entries, and press the **OK** button.
- The edited Dial Up will be listed in the **RISG Dial Ups [ccd31] window** as a new record.

# **System Control**

• The System Control File assigns devices to the Odyssey system. There are three types of devices to be setup in this module. Alarm Display's (Workstations), Printers used for real time transaction logging and Serial Trunk lines.

## **Data Entry**

- First you must launch the System Control module. The RISG Security Management System window and select System Control from the drop down menu.
- After selecting the **System Control** module, the **List records windows** will appear.

3 4	Type           Alarm Display         Alarm Display           Alarm Display         Alarm Display           Alarm Display         Alarm Display	1 2 3	KBEI11 NOT USED NOT USED	Description     KBEI11     (comments)     (comments)	
2 3 4 5	Alarm Display Alarm Display	2 3	NOT USED	(comments)	
3 4	Alarm Display	3	NOT USED		
	Alarm Display				
5		4	NOT USED	(comments)	
	Alarm Display	5	NOT USED	(comments)	
6	Alarm Display	6	NOT USED	(comments)	
7	Alarm Display	7	NOT USED	(comments)	
8	Alarm Display	8	NOT USED	(comments)	
9	Alarm Display	9	NOT USED	(comments)	
10	Alam Display	10	NOT USED	(comments)	
System Control -			No.		
Port	NOT USED		Trun	k Line Type	<b>T</b>
Associated Printer	r				
Description					

## **Field Names**

- When changing the information in the System Control File, the field names listed here apply. This
  module contains fixed data, therefore there is no ability to add or delete records. You are only
  allowed to edit the existing records.
  - Ø **Type:** The type of port, whether Alarm Display, Printer or Trunk Line
  - Ø No.: The Port Number assigned in the database.
  - Ø **Port:** The Server/Workstation name up to 16 characters. Serial device name for Printers and Trunk Line.
  - Ø **Description:** The description of Devices to aid in locating during troubleshooting.
  - Ø **Printer:** The logging printers assigned to the Displays.
- You can make a selection by highlighting the desired line. You can either double-click, or select the record and use the one of the **Open** functions to edit that record. Once you've opened the record, the **Change a record 1 of 1** window will appear.
- You can then edit the appropriate data according to the following information:

## **Alarm Display**

Figure 40: Change a record

9	) System Control —			
	Control Type	Alarm Display	No.	1
	Port	Training Server	Trunk Line Type	0 - AN1(9600)
	Associated Printer	0		
	Description	(comments)		
L				

• The System Control file assigns the **Workstation** name to a **Display** number used by the system. All routing of alarms, transfers, and history transactions are completed with the **Display** number.

After you have completed this programming, when asked for a Display number in any other module, you will use the Display number associated with the desired Workstation.

• To check the correct Workstation name, go to the desired workstation, and do a right mouse click on the **My Computer** icon located on the Windows Desktop and select **Properties** form the menu. The System Properties window will appear.

#### Figure 41: System Properties Page 1

					×		
🔾 🗸 🖓 🕨 Control Panel 🕨	All Control Panel Items	n 🔻	<b>4y</b>	Search Control Panel	٩		
Control Panel Home	View basic information	about your computer			• 0		
😗 Device Manager	Windows edition						
Remote settings Windows 7 Ultimate							
System protection     Copyright © 2009 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.							
👹 Advanced system settings	System						
	Rating:	3,3 Windows Experience Inde	x				
	Processor:	Intel(R) Pentium(R) Dual CPU E	2200	@ 2.20GHz 2.20 GHz			
	Installed memory (RAM):	2.00 GB					
	System type:	32-bit Operating System					
	Pen and Touch:	No Pen or Touch Input is availab	le for	this Display			
	Computer name, domain, and	workgroup settings			- 11		
See also	Computer name:	win7-32		🛞 Change settings			
Action Center	Full computer name:	win7-32					
Windows Update Performance Information and	Computer description:						
Tools	Workgroup:	WORKGROUP					
	1M2 1 12 12						

- Under Computer name, domain, and workgroup settings the **Full Computer name**: will appear.
- Enter the Full Computer name in the Port box.
- You can add a description such as its location or use in the **Description** box.
- If there is a **Logging printer** assigned to this station, you can enter the appropriate Printer number in the Assoc. Printer box.
- The **Trunk Line Type** field is not used for these records.

A Workstation MUST be assigned here prior to operation of the Alarm Display. If a Workstation is not assigned here, no alarms will be reported to the Alarm Display. Place the Workstation Name in the device name section. If any Alarm Display numbers are not used, they must say, "NOT USED" in the Port field.

### **Printers**

• The Serial ports that the printers are connected to are programmed here. To assign a printer, double click a printer type in the System Control file and Change a record 1 of 1 window will appear.

#### Figure 84: System Control File Printers

System Control No.	Туре	No.	Port	Description	Associated Pr
63	Alarm Display	63	NOT USED	(comments)	
64	Alarm Display	64	NOT USED	(comments)	
65	Printer	1	COM1	(comments)	
66	Printer	2	COM3	(comments)	
67	Printer	3	NOT USED	(comments)	
68	Printer	4	NOT USED	(comments)	
69	Printer	5	NOT USED	(comments)	
70	Printer	6	NOT USED	(comments)	
71	Printer	7	NOT USED	(comments)	
72	Printer	8	NOT USED	(comments)	
70	i ne i	0	NOT LODS	- 1 <i>i</i> - 13	

- Enter the port in the **Port** box that printer will be connected to.
- Enter the description in the **Description** box and when you are ready click the **OK** button.
- After you've assigned a Printer, you need to add that printer number to the Alarm Display you want to be connected to. In this manner, Workstation transactions such as "Alarm Transactions", "Logged-in" "Command Sent", and "Logged out" will be assigned to this printer.
- Printers assigned here are used as serial **Transaction Logging printers** only. These printers print all real time transactions such as alarms, acknowledgments, and all other types of system activity.

### Please take note that these are Transaction Printers only and not Report Printers.

## **Report Printers**

• **Report** printers are assigned to each workstation as local printers. They are setup through standard conventions of Windows 2000 and use local ports. All Receptors reports are sent to the Workstation's default printer.

### **Network Printers**

- You can assign any printer on your network to a workstation. Logging Printers should be line, or dot-matrix printers only. Assignment of a network printer is done through the **Net Use** command. See the Utilities Section of this manual for a detailed description.
- Enter the data into the **Port** field using the appropriate serial or parallel assignment number (COM1, COM2, LPT1...etc). You can add a description such as its location or use. The **Trunk** Line Type, and Associated Printer fields are not used for these records.

### **Trunk Lines**

- This section pertains to serial devices only. LAN panels are not entered here.
- The Odyssey system is capable of operating LAN and Serial panels both older (GP1-ACP) and newer format (AN1-LAN/Serial) simultaneously. In order to comply with the older communication style, the software builds what is known as a **Virtual Trunk Line**. Panel addressing uses the following protocol:

 Table 8: Trunk Line / Panel Address

Trunk Line Number	Control File Port	Panel Address	Trunk Line Number	Control File Port	Panel Address
0	0	0 - 7	8	8	64 - 71
1	1	8 - 15	9	9	72 - 79

2	2	16 - 23	10	10	80 - 87
3	3	24 - 31	11	11	88 - 95
4	4	32 - 39	12	12	96 -103
5	5	40 - 47	13	13	104 -111
6	6	48 - 55	14	14	112 -119
7	7	55 - 63	15	15	120 -127

- If you use any of the panel addresses as a Serial or LAN panel, then all eight addresses must stay the same within the trunk line number. For example:
  - Ø If panel 1 is set as a Serial panel, then addresses 0-7 must be serial panels. In this example you could not operate address 5 as a LAN panel. The LAN panel would have to be addressed using the next available number such as 8 or higher in this case. Conversely, panels 8-15 would be set to LAN panels and could not be used for serial addresses.
- To program a Trunk Line double click on the desired **Trunk Line** in the **Type** column of the **System Control File** and the Change a record 1 of 1 window will appear.

Figure 85: Trunk Line Change a record

SYSTEM CONTROL					[
i 🗔 😤 🗙 诸					
	1			1	
System Control No.	Туре	No.	Port	Description	Associated Pr
71	Printer	7	NOT USED	(comments)	
72	Printer	8	NOT USED	(comments)	
73	Printer	9	NOT USED	(comments)	
74	Printer	10	NOT USED	(comments)	
75	Trunk Line	0	NOT USED	(comments)	
76	Trunk Line	1	NOT USED	(comments)	
77	Trunk Line	2	NOT USED	(comments)	
78	Trunk Line	3	NOT USED	(comments)	
79	Trunk Line	4	NOT USED	(comments)	
80	Trunk Line	5	NOT USED	(comments)	
21	T 1.10	0	NOTHERD	12 .3	

## **Entering Data**

Figure 86: Trunk Line Create a record

9	System Control —			
	Control Type	Trunk Line	No.	6
	Port	NOT USED	Trunk Line Type	0 - AN1(9600)
	Associated Printer	0		0 - AN1(9600) 1 - GP1(2400)
	Description	(comments)		2 - GP1(1200) 3 - DIAL-UP(9600)
				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

- When programming you will enter the port name such as **COM5** in the **Port** field.
- Enter the desired description in the description box that will identify the trunk line by location or function.
- Click the down arrow in the **Trunk Line Type** box and select the panel that will be connected to the selected COM port. This field will set the Baud rate automatically for the selected panel.

- **1.) AN1** = 9600 Baud
- **2.) GP1** = 2400 Baud
- **3.) GP1** = 1200 Baud This is a special version that is not commonly used but is still supported.
- **4.) DIAL UP** = 9600

Please note that Serial AN1 trunk lines require an RSC panel to communicate to the eight AN1's. Although RSC panels do require correct addressing, there is no additional programming required.

• Once you have entered the entire data click the **OK** button when ready and you will be returned to the **RISG System Control Records – [Ctrl1]** window.

## Initializing the Trunk Line

• In order to communicate over a newly created Trunk Line you must stop and restart Receptors Service3. If Receptors Service3.not running then you must start it.

# **Group Codes**

The Group Code file is the location where Access Levels and Time Zones are paired together to form accessibility rights for the cardholders. Each Group Code has **Eight** Access Level/Time Zone pairs. Each pair is separate and read individually. There is also expiration dates available for each pair. This architecture allows you to expire a pair of Access Level/Time Zones from the group code without affecting the entire group code. This is very useful for temporary access requirements by making the change to the group code rather than having to visit each cardholder record.

## **Data Entry**

First you must launch the **Group Code** module. To do this click Admin at the top of the **RISG Security Management System Window**. **Administrator** from the drop down menu and Click on **Access Level** and click on **Group Code**.

• After selecting the Group Code module, the List a Group Code(s) window will appear:

Figure 87: List a Group Code(s)

			1		1	
	scription		Last Cha	nge By		
Access Level					)	
Access Level Timezone	Expiration Date		Access Level Timezone	Expiration Date		
1	11 2	5		11 👻		
2	11 2	6		11 2		
3	11 🖂	7		11 💌		
4	11 💌	B		11 💌		
: Group Code List : : =						
Number Description		coss level Timezone	2 Access Level Ti	mezone 3 Access Lev	and the second	Access Level Time
	Access Level Timezone 1 A				el Timezone 4	
ramoer bescription	Access Level Timezone 1 A	Access Lever Timezone			el Timezone 4	
	Access Level Timezone 1 A				el Timezone 4	
	Access Level Timezone 1 A				ei Timezone 4	
	Access Level Timezone 1 A				ei Timezone 4	
	Access Level Timezone 1 A				el fimezone 4	
name: Desemption	AccessLevel Timezone 1 A				el limezone 4	
	Access Level Timezone 1 A				el limezone 4	
таласы белерден	AccessLevel Timezone 1 A	REESTERS INCOME			el limezone 4	
талады белериян	Access Level Timezone I A				el IImezone 4	
TRAINING STREET, DESCRIPTION	Access Level Timezone I A				et iimezone 4	
	Access Level Timezone I A				et iimezone 4	
	Access Level Timezone 1 A				et iimezone 4	
	Access Level Timezone I A				et iimezone a	
	Access Level Timezone ] A				el limezone 3	
	Access Level Timezone I A				el límezone 4	
	Access Level Timezone ] A				el límezone 4	
	Access Level Timezone   A				el límezone 4	
	Access Level Timezone ] A				el límezone 4	
	Access Level Timezone   A				el límezone 4	
					el límezone 4	
	Access Level Timezone ] A				el límezone 4	

• The List a Group Code(s) window will be active only at this time.

Figure 88: RISG Group Codes

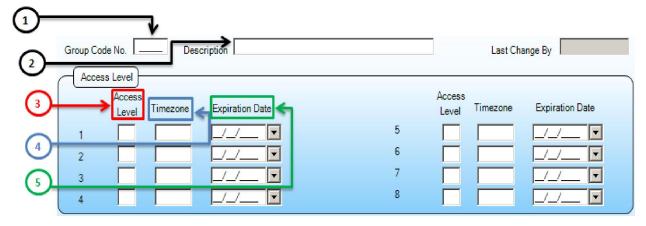
= : : Group Code	= : : Group Code List : : =										
Number	Description	Access Level	Timezone 1	Access Level	Timezone 2	Access Level	Timezone 3	Access Level	Timezone 4	Access Level	Timezon
1	Administrator	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete a Time Zone.

## Building a Group Code

Because of the design of the module, Group Codes are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a **New** record, the **Add a Time Zone** window will appear:

Figure 89: Add a Group Code



### **Field Names**

The Group Code Module contains the following field names:

- **1). Group Code Number:** The number assigned to this set of Access Level / Time Zone pairs. The number is used for programming in the Master Personnel File. This number is generated by the system.
- 2). Descriptions: Description of the Group Code. 40 alphanumeric characters maximum.
- **3).** Access Level: Data entry fields for the Access Level numbers you've programmed in the Access Level Module.
- **4). Time Zone** Data entry fields for the Time Zone numbers you've programmed in the Time Zone Module.
- **5). Expiration Dates:** These fields can be used to expire one Access Level/Time Zone pair from a Group Code without affecting the other pairs within the Group Code. Right clicking on the field will bring up a calendar from which you can select the expiration date, pressing the function key F3 will enter today's date.

### **Copying Records**

- You can copy from one Group Code to the next by doing any of the following:
  - Ø Highlight the Group Code you want to copy from and Select **Open**, and the **Change a** record window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Highlight the Group Code you want to copy from and Select **New** and the **Add a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Right click on the Group Code you want to copy from and select **Add** from the pop down menu and the **Add a record** window will appear.

- Make sure to change the **Group Code number** and if required you can change the Description, Access Level, Time Zone, and the Expiration Date and press the **OK** button.
- The edited Group Code will be listed in the **RIS Group [Gcod1] window** as a new record.

# **Access Levels**

Access Levels are groups of Readers that form a collection used to provide access to the areas of the system. An Access Level can be one or all of the Readers. Each Reader can be used in as many Access Levels as required. Access Levels are formed with Time Zones to create pairs used to generate Group Codes. These Group Codes are then assigned to Cardholders to provide the necessary accessibility within your system.

## **Suggested Guidelines**

• When building Access Levels, a good procedure to follow is to build a grid of your system:

### Table 9: System Grid

	RDR1	RDR2	RDR3	RDR4	RDR5	RDR6	RDR7	RDR8
Administrators	X	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
Security		X	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х
Managers	X		Х	Х	Х		Х	
Technical	X		Х	Х			Х	
Day1	X		Х	Х				
Day2	X		Х					
Day3	X							
Day4	X			Х				
Janitors	X		Х	Х	Х	Х		
Contractors	X							Х
Telephone	X			Х				Х

• On the left, list all of the possible combinations of individual groups that need different types of access in your system. Across the top list all the Readers in your system. When that's complete, simply put an X in the box that corresponds to the Readers each one of those groups need access to. When you're finished with this grid, you'll have the baseline Access Levels you need to provide basic access to your system.

### **Data Entry**

- First you must launch the Access Level file. To do this click on Admin at the top of the RISG Security Management System window and select Administrator from the drop down menu. Click on Access and click on Access Level
- After selecting the Access Level module, the List records window will appear:

Master Personnel Badging Hardware Configuration Access Command Map De Access Level Timezone Group Code Event Schedule Holiday Elevator Contro Access Level No.		
Description           = :: Access Level List :: =           Number         Description           Audit         Last Changed	System Reader	Selected Reader
		Add>> << Remove
Last Change By	Add Edit Delete	Save Cancel Print Help

• The List records window will be active only at this time..

Figure 91: RISG Access Level

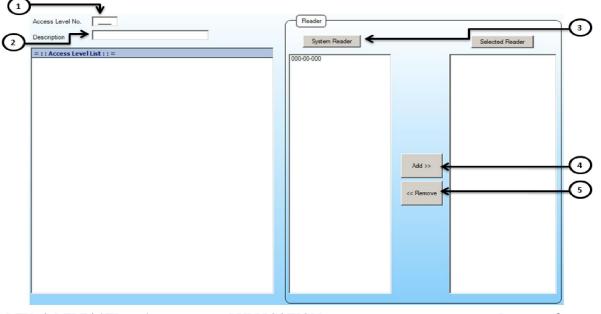
Acc	ess Level No.				
Des	scription				
=:	: Access Leve	l List : : =			
=:	: Access Leve Number	l List : : = Description	Audit	Last Changed	

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete an Access Level.

### **Building an Access Level**

Because of the design of the module, Access Levels are programmed in a group. You can use any
of the <u>Open</u> functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a
New record, the Add a record window will appear:

Figure 92: Add a record



### **Field Names**

Access Levels have the following field names:

- **1).** Access Level Number: The number associated to a programmed group of readers. This number is used for programming in the Group Code Files.
- 2). Description: Description of the Access Level. 40 alphanumeric characters maximum.
- **3).** System Reader: The list of readers programmed in the system and available for the Access Level being programmed.
- **4).** Add: Used to place a Reader in the Access Level. Highlight the required Reader in the System Reader box and press the Add button and the Reader will be added to the Selected Readers box.
- **5). Remove:** Used if you place a Reader in the Access Level (Selected Reader box) incorrectly, just highlight the Reader in the **Selected Readers** box and press the Remove button and the Reader will re-appear in the **Systems Readers** box. Continue to select the required Readers and add them to the **Access Level** until all the Reader you need are in the **Selected Readers** box.
- 6). Selected Readers: The group of readers added to the Access Level.

### **Copying Records**

- You can copy from one Access Level to the next by doing any of the following:
  - Ø Highlight the Access Level you want to copy from and Select **Open**, and the **Change a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Highlight the Access Level you want to copy from and Select New and the Add a record window will appear. OR
  - Ø Right click on the Access Level you want to copy from and select **Add** from the pop down menu and the **Add a record** window will appear.
- Make sure to change the Access Level number and if required you can change the Description and Readers and press the OK button.
- The edited Access Level will be listed in the **RIS Access Level [alvl1] window** as a new record.

### **General Notes**

The performance of the system during downloading and offline operation will be affected if all group codes are filled to their maximum. Organize your Access Levels so that if there are larger numbers of requirements with minor differences to the Reader list, that you make two distinct Access levels.

# Time Zones

Time Zones are how you establish the operating time parameters for the Access Levels you've just built. The Time Zones are primarily used for cardholder accessibility requirements. You can also use Time Zones for unlocking doors, and shunting alarm points.

## **Data Entry**

First you must launch the **Time Zone** file. To do this click on **Admin** at the top of the **RISG Security Management System** window. **Click on** Administrator from the drop down menu then hit on **Access** Level and click on **Time Zone** 

• After selecting the **Time Zone** module, the **List a Time Zone(s)** window will appear:

#### Figure 93: List a Time Zone

zone No.	Descr	iption					Last 0	Change By			Set TimeFormat To	Military Ti
Normal Date	)	× 00.00	Change All			<u> </u>	Holiday		~ 0	0.00	Change All	
	Begin	End	Begin	End				Begin		End	Begin	Er
Monday	00.00	00:00	00:00	00:00			Holiday 2	00:00		0:00	00.00	00:00
Tuesday	00.00	00:00	00:00	00.00			Holiday 3	00:00		0:00	00:00	00:00
wednesday	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00			Holiday 4	00:00		0.00	00.00	00:00
Thursday	00.00	00.00	00:00	00:00			Holiday 5	00:00		0:00	00:00	00:00
Friday	00:00	00.00	00:00	00:00			Holiday 6	00:00		0:00	00.00	00:00
Saturday		00:00	00:00				Holiday 7	00:00		0:00	00.00	00:00
Sunday	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00			Holiday 8	00:00		0:00	00:00	00:00
Holiday 1	00:00	00.00	00:00									
					_	_						
Timezone Li: Number	st : : = Description	MonP1B	MonP1E	MonP2B	MonP2E	TueP1B	Tue	<sup>9</sup> 1Е Т	ueP2B	TueP2E	WedP1B	We

• The List a Time Zone(s) window will be active only at this time.

Figure 94: RISG Time Zone

= :	: Timezone Lis	it ::=										
	Number	Description	MonP1B	MonP1E	MonP2B	MonP2E	TueP1B	TueP1E	TueP2B	TueP2E	WedP1B	WedP1E
F	1	All Day Ever	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete a Time Zone.

### **Building a Time Zone**

Because of the design of the module, Time Zones are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter an **Add** record, the **Add a Time Zone** window will appear:

1 Last Change By Set TimeFormat To Military Time Description Timezone No. 2 Normal Date Holiday Change All • 00:00 Change Al • 00:00 End End Begin Begin Begin End End Begin 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 Holiday 2 00:00 00:00 00:00 Monday П 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 Holiday 3 Tuesday 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 7 00:00 Holiday 4 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 Wednesday 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 Holiday 5 00:00 Thursday 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 Holiday 6 00:00 00:00 Friday 00:00 00:00 Holiday 7 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 Saturday 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 Holiday 8 🔲 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 Sunday 00:00 00:00 00:00 00:00 Holiday 1 5 (6) 4. Hit on drop down arrow to view First Period / Second Period

#### Figure 95: Add a Time Zone

## **Field Names**

REV.-A RELEASED 08/2011

- **1). Time Zone No.:** The number associated to a programmed time zone. This number is used for programming in the Mater Personnel, Reader, Input, Group Shunt and Group Code files.
- 2). Description: Description of the Time Zone. 40 alphanumeric characters maximum.
- **3).** There are 8 **Holiday** segments for each Time Zone. These segments correspond to the Holiday File. For example: you want to end the Time Zone at 15:00 for one holiday, and 12:00 for another. You can enter one time in segment 1 and the other in segment 2. In the holiday file, put the first date with segment 1 and the second with segment 2. On those dates, the system will ignore what the actual day is, and look in the appropriate segment.
- **4). First Period / Second Period:** In the Time Zone file, there are two start fields and two stop fields for each 24 Hour period. This allows you to start and stop the time segment twice each day. As an example if you wanted to start the segment at 08:00 and stop it and 12:00, you can then begin again at 13:00, and stop at 17:00. Enter the segments required using the second Start/Stop period if needed.
- **5). Begin/End:** For begin time and end time each period a day begins at 00:00 and ends at 23:59.
- 6). Change All: Select the period you need and enter the Time and click on Change All. All the entries will be changed.

### **General Notes**

• You can enter a time in any of the fields then copy that time using the **Control C** function. Use you mouse to move to the next field you need to enter the same time in. Press **Control V** and you will paste the copied time. You can use this function to fill in repetitive times

Enter midnight as 23:59.

- If your Time Zone rolls over midnight, Place the end segment of the first day at 23:59 and the start segment of the second day at 00:00.
- You are not required to enter any time parameters to the second segment of each day if the first segment covers the time. If the second segment is not needed, it will not be read.

# **User Level**

The **User Level** file is the location where all users of the Odyssey System are assigned their **Passkey** levels and **Partition** levels. Password levels are assigned as a numerical value between 1 and 8; with 8 being the highest assignable password level. The individual permissions for the tasks in the system are set in the **Command Level File**. The Password Levels are hierarchical in usage, i.e., a level 8 operator can access all functions, and a operator assigned a level 5 can only access functions assigned a level 5 or lower.

**Partition Level** There are 5 **Partition Levels**, 1-5, and 0 for no partition. Levels 1-4 can only access circuit and personnel data within their partition and Level 5 can access data in all partitions. For installations not using the partitioning feature, all operators' Partition Level should be set at 5

## Data Entry

First you must launch the User Level file. To do this click on User Passkey Level at the top of the RISG Security Management System window and select User Level from the tab

• After selecting the User Level module, the RIS User Records – (User1) window will appear:

Figure 96: RISG User Record

	User ID	Passkey Leve	Partition Lev	Last Changed
Þ	Admin	9	5	Admin
	Administrator	9	5	(null)
	New Admin	8	5	Admin
	ris	9	5	(null)

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete a User Level.

### **Building a User Level**

Because of the design of the module, User Levels are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a **Add** record, the **Add a record** window will appear:

#### Figure 97: Add a Record



### **Field Names**

The User Level Module contains the following field names:

- 1). User ID: The log in name of the operator as set up in the Windows Users Accounts
- 2). Passkey Level: The level of authority that an operator has with regard to the Odyssey applications. This is assigned as a numerical value between 1 and 8; with 8 being the highest assignable passkey level.
- **3). Partition Level:** The value set for operator when the partitioning feature is used to block access to cardholder, reader circuit, output circuit and input circuit records. If this feature is not in use, the value should be set to 5, allowing access to all circuits and records for all operators. Editing permissions can be set in the **Command Level File**.

# **Command Level**

The **Command Level** file is the location where all functions of the Odyssey are assigned their **Passkey Levels**. Passkey levels are assigned as a numerical value between 1 and 8; with 8 being the highest assignable passkey level. The operator permissions for the tasks in the system are set in the **User Level File**. The Passkey Levels are hierarchical in usage, i.e., a level 8 operator can access all functions, and a level 5 operator can access all functions assigned a level 5 or lower.

### Data Entry

First you must launch the User Level file. To do this click on User Passkey Level at the top of the RISG Security Management System window and select Passkey Level from the sub tab.

• After selecting the **Command Level** module, the **RIS Passkey Level Records – (Plvl1)** window will appear:

Figure 98: RISG Passkey Level Record

= :	: Passkey Lev	el List : : =		
	Passkey Code	Command	Passkey Leve	Last Changed
•	ackn	Acknowledge Al	8	Admin
	aesk0	List/View AES K	1	(null)
	aesk1	Update AES Ke	1	(null)
	aldesc0	List Access Lev	1	(null)
	aldesc1	Update Access	1	(null)
	alvi0	List Access Lev	1	(null)
	alvl1	Update Access	1	(null)
	an1s0	List AN1/ANX I	1	(null)
	an1s1	Update AN1/AN	1	(null)
	anid	Annunciation C	1	(null)
	annun0	List Annunciati	1	(null)
	annun1	Update Annunc	1	(null)

• At this point, you can Add, Edit or View a Command Level.

# (Note: Do not add a command to the Command Level File, unless directed by RISG Products technical personnel.)

### **Changing a Command Level**

You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to change a record, the **Change a record** window will appear:

Figure 99: Change a Record



The Command User Level Module contains the following field names:

- 1). Code: Field to be used by Receptors technical personnel only.
- 2). Command: The name of the operation that is currently being assigned a passkey level.
- **3).** Passkey Level: The value set for operator permission level for this particular operation. Operator's individual passkey levels are set in the User Level File.

# Instruction

The Instruction file is the location where Instruction sets can be created for use in the Alarm Display. Instructions are assigned by there number to individual input circuits and can also be assigned globally to reader circuits in the Transaction File. An instruction is 255 characters in length.

## **Data Entry**

First you must launch the **Instruction** file. To do this click on **Admin** at the top of the **RISG Security Management System** window. Click on **Administrator** from the drop down menu then hit on **Command** and then on select **Instruction** 

• After selecting the Instruction module, the List an Instruction(s) window will appear:

Figure 100: List an Instruction

Master Personnel Badging Hardware Configuration Access Comma	nd Map Design User-Passkey Levels		
Group Reader Group Input Group Output Instruction Transaction			
Instruction No.			
Primary Instruction	Alternate Instruction		
=::Instruction List::=			
Number Primary Alternate Last Chang	ed		
Last Change By	Add Edit Delete	Save Cancel	Print Help

• The List a Instruction(s) window will be active only at this time.

Figure 101: RISG Instructions

=:	: Instruction	List : : =		
	Number	Primary	Alternate	Last Changed
۶.	1	Dispatch Securi	Call Police Dep	Admin
	2	Contact Depart		Admin

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete an Instruction set.

### **Building a Instruction**

Because of the design of the module, Instructions are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a **Add** record, the **Add an Instruction** window will appear:

#### Figure 102: Add an Instruction

Instruction No.	
Primary Instruction	Alternate Instruction
2	3

### **Field Names**

The Instruction Module contains the following field names:

- **1). Instruction Number:** The number assigned to this instruction set. This is the number used to attach the instruction set to an input circuit or a reader transaction.
- **2). Primary Instructions:** Text files that are displayed in the Alarm Detail window when an alarm is selected for acknowledgement. 255 alphanumeric characters maximum.
- **3).** Alternate Instructions: Text files that are displayed in the Alarm Detail window when an alarm is selected for acknowledgement during an Alternate Time Zone in the input circuit file. 255 alphanumeric characters maximum.
- Make sure to change the **Instruction number**, as well as the text entries, and press the **OK** button.
- The edited Instruction will be listed in the **RIS Instruction [Inst1] window** as a new record.

# **Transaction File**

• The Transaction File is the control table that routes all global alarm types to the appropriate Workstation. This table allows you to direct alarm transactions, assign instruction sets and set priorities to alarms that are not otherwise set by the circuit files. In addition, you can select whether transactions are routed to the Alarm Display and/or if they are written to the Most Current History queue.

### **Starting the Transaction File**

First you must launch the **Transaction File**. To do this click on **Admin** at the top of the **RISG Security Management System** window. Click on **Administrator** from the drop down menu then hit on **Command** and click on **Transaction**  • After selecting the **Transaction File** module, the **Transaction Records [trns1]** window will display. This window lists all of the Transaction records and their current settings. *Note: Any field with a value of 99 cannot be changed. These settings are made in other modules in the system or are fixed*:

Figure 103: RISG Transaction Records

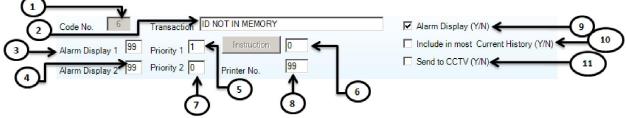
Code	Description Panel Type	Alarm E	Display Alarm Displa	y Priority 1	Priority 2	Printer	Instruction	Alarm Display Current Hi	sto CCTV
1	ACCESS GRANT 2	99	99	99	99	99	99	No	N
2	ID ANNUNCIAT 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	N.
з	READER ANNU 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	IN .
4	CONTROL ACC 2	99	99	99	99	99	99	Yes	N
5	INVALID SYSTE 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	N
6	ID NOT IN ME 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	N
7	INVALID ACCE 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	N
8	INVALID TIME 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	N
9	INVALID KEYP 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	N
10	VOID/UNASSIG 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	N.
11	HARD ANTIPAS 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	N.
12	WORKSTATION 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	N
13	SOFT ANTIPAS 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	N
14	READER LOCKE 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	N
15	CONTROLLER 1	1	0	1	0	1	0	Yes	N
16	DOOR OPEN D 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	N.
17	DOOR CLOSED 3	99	99	1	0	99	0	Yes	N.
19	CONTROLLER 1	1	0	1	0	1	0	Yes	N.
20	708P POWER O 1	1	0	1	0	1	0	Yes	N
21	MULTIPLEXER 1	1	0	1	0	1	0	Yes	N
22	MULTIPLEXER 1	1	0	1	0	1	0	Yes	N
23	REMOTE GRP. 1	1	0	1	0	1	0	Yes	N
24	REMOTE GROU 1	1	0	1	0	1	0	Yes	N
25	NETWARE SER 1	1	0	1	0	1	0	Yes	N
26	WATCH TOUR 2	99	99	99	99	99	99	Yes	DV .
27	WATCH TOUR 2	99	99	99	99	99	99	Yes	N

• At this point, you can modify the settings for the Transaction records.

### **Modifying a Transaction Record**

Because of the design of the module, Transaction records are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to change record, the **Change a Record** window will appear:

Figure 104: Change a Record



### **Field Names**

- **1).** Code No.: Transaction Code number. This number is assigned to the transaction by the system.
- **2). Transaction:** Description of Transaction Code. This is also the basic message that will display for this Transaction. This name is assigned to the transaction by the system.
- **3).** Alarm Display 1: Alarm Display selection. Number referenced is from Alarm Displays in System Control File.
- **4).** Alarm Display 2: Alarm Display selection. Number referenced is from Alarm Displays in System Control File.
- **5). Priority1:** Alarm Display Priority for Alarm Display 1. Priority 9 is highest, 0 is lowest.
- **6). Instruction:** Instruction set is assigned here. Number referenced is from Instruction module.
- **7). Priority2:** Alarm Display Priority for Alarm Display 1. Priority 9 is highest, 0 is lowest.
- **8). Printer:** Alarm Printer selection. Number referenced is from Printer section of the System Control File.
- **9).** Alarm Display (Y/N): This field allows you to select whether a given Transaction will be routed to the Alarm Display. Transactions such as Access

Granted are normally not sent to the Alarm Display so that Operators can concentrate on Alarm messages that are exceptions from the norm.

- **10). Include in Most Current History (Y/N):** This field allows you to select whether a given Transaction will be routed to the Most Current History queue.
- **11). Send to CCTV:** This field allows you to select. Whether a given transaction will be routed to CCTV file

## **Event Schedule**

Events Schedule is a list of automatic commands that will be sent out to the system based on time and day of the week. You can unlock, and lock Readers, set Keypads for keypad or card only, Open or Close areas, and control outputs.

With the Shunt/Unlock Time zone feature in the Reader file and the Shunt Time zone feature in the Input file, the need for scheduled events is somewhat lessened. There are however, many instances for these events.

### **Data Entry**

First you must launch the **Event Schedule** file. To do this click on **Admin** at the top of the **RISG Security Management System** window then hit on **Administrator** from the drop down menu then select **Access Level** and click on **Event Schedule**.

• After selecting the Event Schedule module, the Event Schedule window will appear:

#### Figure 105: RISG Transaction Records

Day	-	Time	Event Type	CircuitType		Last Change By
	¥	00:00	*	Circuit		
	Y	00:00	v	Circuit		
	Y	00:00	v	Circuit		
	v	00:00	v	Circuit		
	v	00:00	V	Circuit		
	v	00:00	Ŷ	Circuit		
	Y	00:00	Y	Circuit		
	v	00:00	Y	Circuit		
	Time	Circ	uit Type Area	Number	Last Changed ID	
)ate						
Date						
)ate						

	А	Day:Time				
		Day	Time	Event Type	CircuitType	Last Change By
ഫ	N	0 - Monday 💌	08:00		Circuit Type	
1- 2	2	1 - Tuesday 💌	08:00	. <u>.</u>	Circuit Type	
Ŷ	R	2 · Wednesday 💌	08:00	<b></b>	Circuit Type	
	R	3 - Thursday 💌	08:00	× I	Circuit Type	
	R	4 - Friday 💌	08:00	<b></b>	Circuit Type	
	R	5 - Saturday 💌	08:00	<b></b>	Circuit Type	
		6 - Sunday 💌	08:00	<u>×</u>	Circuit Type	
	M	7 - Holiday 💌	08:00		Circuit Type	
			1	1	1	
				(3)	4	(5)

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete a Schedule Event

### **Field Names**

The Schedule Events Module contains the following field names:

- **1).** Day allows you to select the day you want to program the event under. You will select Monday through Sunday or Holiday 1 through 8.
- 2). Time is the time you want the event to occur under the selected day. Operates under a 24 Hour clock.
- **3).** Event Type is the selected procedure for this event such as Lock, Unlock, or Keypad only.
- 4). Circuit Type is the Reader or Output Circuit name selected for the event.
- 5). Last Changed By is the name of the last USER who Added or Changed an event.

### **Building a Scheduled Event**

The Event Schedule module is a custom application module. The procedures described in the Standard Conventions section do not apply.

## **Entering Data**

- **Day:** Click the down arrow to select the day that you want the event to occur from the pull down List. You can also select holidays. (Refer to the holiday section of this manual to setup holidays.
- Time: Defaults to the same time as the computer time. Set the time that you want the event to occur. You can use the up/down arrows to set the time. The time is Military time and the format is 00:00 23:59.
- Event Type: Click the down arrow to display the event types. The events that can be performed are Readers or Outputs. If you select a **Reader** event then the circuit button will change to Reader. If you select an Output event the circuit button will change to Output. After you click on Reader or Output button, the available circuit will show you and let you to select. After you selected the circuit from available circuit, it will appear in the box to the right. Click **Save** button to complete the event for that day and you will be returned to the **RISG Event** window.

### **Creating a New Event**

- Put a check mark on day that you want the event to occur on from the **Day**. You will notice that a number represents the day that you choose and it will appear in the day box.
- Click on the **Add** button at the top of the window and the Timed Event Information window will appear:

#### Figure 107: Timed Event Information

A	Day:Time				
	Day		Time	Event Type	CircuitType
	0 - Monday	-	08:00	<b>•</b>	Circuit Type

- The day that you selected previously will appear in the **Day** box.
- Enter the time in the Time box using Military time format (00:00 23:59). You can only choose one Event Type. For this example I will choose a Reader Circuit)
  - § Click on the **Circuit** button and the Circuit Type window will appear:

#### Figure 108: Circuit Type



**Reader** circuit automatically will be your Circuit type based on your Event Type.

#### Figure 109: Circuit

🎒 Reader Circuit List	×
000-00-000 : Reader 1 000-01-004 : EXP-R Reader 2	
buo-ur-buq EXF At header 2	

Select the desired Reader from the list and when you are ready click the OK button and the Timed Event Information window will appear displaying the Reader User ID that you just selected in the Circuit box.

#### **Figure 110: Timed Event Information**



§ At this point you can choose the function that you desire to occur on Monday at 12:46. You can do this by clicking on the down arrow in the **Event** box. The functions that are available is:

#### For Readers:

- § Unlock Reader
- § Lock Reader
- § Lockout Reader
- § Card only mode
- § Card+Key mode

#### For Outputs:

- § Output On
- **Output Off**
- § § **Output Pulsed**
- § Output On momentary short - is to be used with EXP-O panels only and it will turn the output on for 6 seconds and then off.
- § **Open Area**
- § A number represents each function as you can notice in the Event Box. I have chosen to command the Reader to Unlock the Reader on Monday at 12:46.

**Figure 111: Timed Event Information** 

Day	Time	Event Type	CircuitType		
🔽 🛛 - Monday 💌	12:46	1 Unlock Reader	Reader	000-00-000	Reader 1

§ When you are ready click the **Save** button and the Even Schedule window will re- appear displaying the new event.

#### Figure 112: Event Schedule

= :	: Event Sched	lule List : : =	:				
	Date	Time	Circuit Type	Area	Number	Last Ch	anged ID
۶.	0 - Monday	12:46	000-00-000	(null)	1 Unlock Reade	Admin	1

### **Copying Events**

- When using the copy function, all programmed event for one day can be copied to another day. • You cannot select which functions in the day are to be copied. All events will copy to the new day.
- Click on the **Copy** button at the top of the Event Schedule window and the Copy Events window will appear.

#### **Figure 113: Copy Events**

\_

Day:Time			
Day	Time Event Type	CircuitType	Last Change By
🔽 0 - Monday 💌	08:00	Circuit Type	
I - Tuesday	08:00	Circuit Type	
2 - Wednesday	08:00	Circuit Type	
3 - Thursday	08:00	Circuit Type	
🔽 4 - Friday 💌	08:00	Circuit Type	
🔽 5 - Saturday 💌	08:00	Circuit Type	
6 - Sunday 💌	08:00	Circuit Type	
7 - Holiday	08:00	Circuit Type	

- Select the day that you want to copy.
- I have selected to copy Monday events to Saturday.

Figure 114: Event Copy

A	Day:Time						
	Day	Time	Event Type	CircuitType			Last Change By
M	0 - Monday 💌	08:00	1 Unlock Reader 💌	Reader	000-00-000	Reader 1	
	1 - Tuesday 💌	08:00	1 Unlock Reader	Reader	000-00-000	Reader 1	
	2 - Wednesday 💌	08:00	1 Unlock Reader 💌	Reader	000-00-000	Reader 1	
	3 - Thursday 💌	08:00	1 Unlock Reader 💌	Reader	000-00-000	Reader 1	
	4 - Friday 💌	08:00	1 Unlock Reader 💌	Reader	000-00-000	Reader 1	
	5 - Saturday 💌	08:00	1 Unlock Reader 💌	Reader	000-00-000	Reader 1	
	6 - Sunday 💌	08:00	<b>_</b>	Circuit Type			
	7 - Holiday 💌	08:00	<b>_</b>	Circuit Type			

- Click the Save button when you are ready and Event Schedule window will appear.
- To see Tuesday events simply select Tuesday from the Day pull down list.

### **Deleting An Event**

- To delete existing records, click or highlight on the record.
- Click "Delete" button to delete

*Please Note: If you don't highlight a record the first record in the list will be deleted. Make sure to highlight a record before clicking the delete button.* 

# Holiday

The Holiday file allows you to declare calendar dates as Holidays, thereby invoking a different set of access or security parameters for your facility on that particular day.

### **Data Entry**

First you must launch the **Holiday** file. To do this click on **Admin** at the top of the **RISG Security Management System** window then hit on **Administrator** from the drop down menu and click on **Access Level** and click on **Holiday**.

• After selecting the Holiday module, the RISG Holiday Records [Holi1] window will appear:

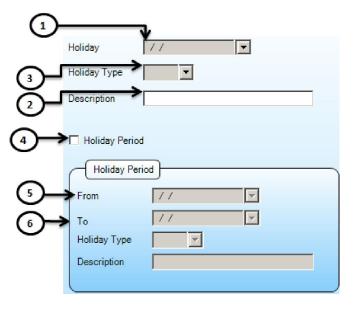
Figure 115: RISG Holiday Records

= :	: Holiday List : : =				
	ID	Holiday Number	Holiday Date	Description	Last Changed By
۶.	1	1	12/25/2011 12:00:	Christmas Day	Admin

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete a Holiday Record.

### **Building a Holiday**

Because of the design of the module, Holiday Records are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a **Add** record, the **Add a Holiday** window will appear:



• Time Zone Record showing Holiday data entry fields.

#### Figure 117: Time Zone Showing Holiday

### **Field Names**

The Holiday Module contains the following field names:

- 1. **Holiday** is the calendar date assigned to this Holiday Record.
- 2. **Description:** Text descriptor of the Holiday Record. 30 Characters Maximum
- 3. Holiday Type: This is the number used to attach the Holiday Record to a Time Zone or an Event Schedule. These Holiday types allow you to use customized schedules for each Holiday during the year. See below
- 4. Holiday Period: This allow you to select for enter long Holiday in to RISG System
- 5. **From:** Is the calendar date assigned to First Period of long holiday
- 6. **To:** Is the calendar date assigned to End period of the long holiday

ïmezone No.	1 Desc	ription 24/7 and	l Holiday		Last	Change By		Set TimeFormat To	) Military Tir
Normal Date	}				Holiday				_
First Period Er	nd	23:59	Change All				• 00:00	Change All	
	Begin	End	Begin	End		Begin	End	Begin	Enc
Monday	00:00	23:59	00:00	00:00	Holiday 2	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00
Tuesday	00:00	23:59	00:00	00:00	Holiday 3	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00
Wednesday	00:00	23:59	00:00	00:00	Holiday 4	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00
Thursday	00:00	23:59	00:00	00:00	Holiday 5	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00
Friday	00:00	23:59	00:00	00:00	Holiday 6	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00
Saturday	00:00	23:59	00:00	00:00	Holiday 7	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00
Sunday	00:00	23:59	00:00	00:00	Holiday 8	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00
Holiday 1	00:00	23:59	00:00	00:00					

• Event Schedule Record showing Holiday selection for an event.

#### Figure 118: Event Schedule Showing Holiday

	Day:Time Day	Time	Event Type	CircuitType	Last Change B
7	0 - Monday 💌	08:00		Circuit Type	
	0 - Monday 1 - Tuesday 2 - Wednesday	08:00		Circuit Type	
	3 - Thursday 4 - Friday	08:00		Circuit Type	
	5 - Saturday 6 - Sunday 7 - Holiday	08:00		Circuit Type	
	4 - Friday	08:00		Circuit Type	
	5 - Saturday 💌	08:00		Circuit Type	
	6 - Sunday 💌	08:00		Circuit Type	
	7 - Holiday 💌	08:00		Circuit Type	

### **Copying Records**

- You can copy from one Holiday to the next by doing any of the following:
  - Ø Highlight the Holiday you want to copy from and Select **Open**, and the **Change a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Highlight the Holiday you want to copy from and Select New and the Add a record window will appear. OR
  - Ø Right click on the Holiday you want to copy from and select **Add** from the pop down menu and the **Add a record** window will appear.
- Make sure to change the **Holiday number**, as well as the data entries, and press the **OK** button.
- The edited Holiday will be listed in the **RISG Holiday [Holi1] window** as a new record.

# **Master Personnel**

The Master Personnel Record or Cardholder file is the location that cards are entered into the system. RISG has separated this file into two sections:

## Overview

- This section is the Cardholder, or the personal information associated to the individual. This information is mostly text data and is not required for accessibility in the system. The EMPLOYEE ID is the only required field in this portion of the record.
- Access Cards are then attached to these records. A Cardholder can have multiple card records attached. Each card record is individual, having different access requirements, and/or be void or valid. This operation does not require two separate modules. They are seamless through the Master Personnel Record. In addition, Badging operations are completed within the same screens.
- The reality of the Master Personnel files is that it becomes more of an employee database. There are only a few fields that are actually required to provide access in the system. The rest of the fields in the personnel record are provided to maintain data such as employer/company data, and personal information such as address, and phone numbers.
- You can also make changes to the titles of various fields in the personnel database. This allows more versatility in creating and storing the information you require.

# Data Entry

- There are several different ways to enter and work with the database records in the Personnel module. You can add records from scratch, or use default templates. Adding additional cards to a cardholder can be accomplished by a few simple clicks. The following pages describe each area of the Personnel module.
- First you must launch the Master Personnel file. To do this click on Admin at the top of the RISG Security Management System window and select Administrator from the drop down menu.
- After selecting the Master Personnel module, the Odyssey Master Personnel window will appear.

#### Figure 119: RISG Master Personnel

r Personnel Badging	Hardware Configuration Access Con	nmand Map Design User-Passkey Leve	ek	
Holder Employee Info	mation Personal Emergency Inform	ation Auto Comment Time Attendan	Ce	
Employee Id				
First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	Suffix Name	
		Coor rearra		RICC
BadgeType	Printed Badge Name	Partition Levels		
	*			
Information Badge Ca	d			
Card Information		Access Requirements	Single Card Enrollment Reader	[ Picture ]
Card No.	Issue Date //	View Find Add	1 Not Used 👻	
ssue Code		* Group Code	Use card# for Employee ID	
Badge No.	Expiration Date / /	Special Access Readers	Signature	
Badge Code	Threat Level	Special Access TimeZone		
KeyPad No	Card Status			
Emboss Number	0 -Current htipassback Exempt Reader Tour	Special Access Level     Bevator Access	Browse Remove	
Annunciate A	nipassoack exempt [] Header I our	Elevator Access	Browse Remove	
Cards Issued		Barcode	Last Used Information	Remove Crop
		Barcode	Used Reader	Browse Grab
			Used Date	Gran
		Use Barcode Number Like Employ	yee ID Used Time	Last Change By
		Add Card Delete Card Finger	Print Area No.	N/A N/A
		Mud Card [Densie Card] [1 mgen		1929

- At this point, if you click on **Personnel** at the top of the screen, you can Ø
   Add a record by
  - § **Use a Default** file will open a directory for you that will have a list of templates created by you. After you select the template, the record will be opened for you to enter the additional data.
  - **Start from scratch** will open a blank record to be filled in. All fields are empty and you are required to fill in all the appropriate data.
  - Ø Change a record by Last Name, Card Number, Employee ID, or SSN.
  - Ø View a record by Last Name, Card Number, Employee ID, or SSN.
  - Ø Delete a record by Last Name, Card Number, Employee ID, or SSN.
- If you click on **Option** you can:
  - Ø Create a new Default file will open a blank record to be filled in. All fields are empty and you are required to fill in all the appropriate data. Once you have entered all the required data you must save the file.
  - Ø Select to **Always ask for Default** file, are files that are stored as templates to be used to automatically fill in repetitive data. You can build as many files as needed. When opened, the default file directory will open for you to choose the required file. After you select the template, the record will be opened for you to enter the additional data.

- Ø Select to **Remember Default File** and use it, allows you use a saved template every time you create a new record.
- Ø Download Images by
  - § Last Name
  - § Employee ID
  - § Company
  - § Division
- Ø Print Images by
  - § Last Name
    - § Employee ID
    - § Company
    - § Division

## **Adding Records**

• There are two ways to add new records to the system. After selecting **Personnel**, then **Add**, you can choose one of two ways to enter data:

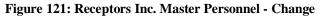
#### Figure 120: RISG Master Personnel – Change

		nand Map Design User-Passkey Levels		
d Holder Employee Infor	nation Personal Emergency Information	tion Auto Comment Time Attendance		
Employee Id				
First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	Suffix Name	
BadgeType	Printed Badge Name	Partition Levels		
	*			
d Information Badge Can	4			
Card Information		Access Requirements	Single Card Enrollment Reader	Ficture
Card No.	Issue Date 1/1 +	View Find Add	Not Used	
Issue Code	Effective Date 1/		Use card# for Employee ID	
Badge No.	Expiration Date / / +		Signature	
Badge Code	Threat Level	Special Access Readers		
KeyPad No	Card Status	Special Access TimeZone		
Emboss Number	0 Current -	Special Access Level		
Annunciate An	tipasaback Exempt 📄 Reader Tour	Bevator Access	Browac Remove	
Cords Issued		Barcode	Last Used Information	Remove Crop
		Barcode	Used Reader	Browse Grab
			Used Date	Control Cardo
		Use Barcode NumberLike Employee IS	Used Time	Lest Change By
		Add Card Delete Card Finger Prin	Ares No.	NA
				N/A
				-

- Start from scratch opens a blank record to be filled in. All fields are empty and you are required to fill in all the appropriate data.
- Use a Default file opens stored files as templates to be used to automatically fill in repetitive data. You can build as many files as needed. When opened, the default file directory will open for you to choose the required file. After you select the template, the record will be opened for you to enter the additional data.

## **Changing Records**

You can change records already in the system by using the Change Record selection. You can
call these records up by: <u>Last Name</u>, <u>Card Number</u>, <u>Employee ID</u>, or <u>SSN</u>. Once opened, you can
add cards, delete cards, change existing card, or cardholder data.



ter Personnel	Badging Hardw	are Configuration	Access (	Command M	sp Design Us	er-Passkey Levels				
d Holder Er	ployee Information	Personal Eme	ergency Info	mation Auto	Comment	Time Attendance				
Employee k	10200									>
First Name		Middle N	ame		Last Name		Suffix Name			
Pete					Rose					
BadgeType		Printed B	adge Name		Partition Lev	els				
	¥				0 0	0 0			_	
										_
									100	
d Information	Badge Card									
) intometori	Badge Lard									
(				C			C			
Card Info	rmation				Access Requir	ements	Single Card	Enrolment Reader	Picture	
Card No.	9787171	Issue Date	10/11/2011	-	Aew E	ind Add	Not Used			
Issue Code	0	Effective Date	10/11/2011				Use card	F for Employee ID		
Badge No.	0	Expiration Date			Group Cod	e 1	0			
					ecial Access F	leaders	Signature			
Badge Code		Threat Level	0 +		ecial Access Ti			-	1	
KeyPad No	0	Card Status		-30	ecial Access 11	mezone U				
Emboss Nu	mber 0	0 -Current		-	Special Access	Level 0				
Annunci	ate Antipess	back Exempt	Reader To	ur 📔	Elevator Aco	0 0	Browse	Remove		
-	and the state of t		- Constanting							
Cards Is	bued				Barcode		Last Used	Information		
	_			Ba	rcode				Remove	Crop
2020							Used Reader	015-00-000	Browse	Grab
							Used Date	10/11/2011		7
9787171				U	Jse Barcode Nu	mber Like Employee IC	Used Time	21:48	Last Change By	2
9787171				6	1000	10	Area No.	0	w.	167
9787171				Adde	Card Delete	e Card Einger Prin				
9787171					Card Delet	e Card Finger Prin			10/11/2011	12:13:04 PM

## **Deleting Records**

• Records to be deleted are called up in the same manner as changing records. Once the record is opened, you can select what record you want to delete.

#### **Figure 122: Delete Options**

	adging Hardw	vare Configuration	Access C	ommand Ma	p Design   Us	er-Passkey Levels				
Holder Emplo	yee Information	Personal Eme	ergency Infor	mation Auto	Comment	Time Attendance				
imployee Id	10200	\$7							-	>
inst Name		Middle N	ame		Last Name		Suffix Name			
ste					Rose					
BadgeType		Printed R	adge Name		Partition Lev	els				<b>37</b>
and a sho	+	. Tanted D	Salle radine		0 0	a second s				
									~	_
formation B	edge Card									
	_			-						
Card Inform	stion			_11 \	locess Requir	ements	Single Card	Enrolment Reader	Picture	
and No.	9787171	Issue Date	10/11/2011	* V	iew Fi	nd Add	Not Used			
ssue Code	0	Effective Date	10/11/2011	-	Group Cod		🔲 Use card#	for Employee ID		
adge No.	0	Expiration Date	11	-			Signature	)		
adge Code	0	Threat Level	0 -		ecial Access F			, 	1	
eyPad No	0	Card Status		Spe	icial Access Ti	meZone 0				
imboss Numbr	e 0	0-Current		+ 5	pecial Access	Level 0				
Annunciate	Antipess	sbook Exempt	Reader To	ar C	Elevator Aco	0 0	Browse	Remove		
									וו	
	4			74	larcode		Last Used I	nformation	Benove	Crop
Cards Issue				Bar	code		Used Reader	019-00-000	Browse	Grab
Cards Issue							Used Date	10/11/2011		
									Last Change B	1
375					lse Baroode Nu	mber Like Employee ID	Used Time	21:48	Cast Crarge si	Y
375					lse Baroode Nu Card   Deletr		Area Ma	21:48		y j winī

- § **Delete the Selected Card** selecting this option will only delete the **Card Number** portion of this record and not the **Cardholders information** in the database.
- § Delete all cards associated to this record selecting this option will delete all Card Numbers assigned to this record and not the <u>Cardholders information</u> in the database.

§ **Delete the entire record** – selecting this option will delete all <u>Card Numbers and</u> <u>the Cardholders information</u> in the database.

## **Opening Records**

 Whether you're opening records to Add, Change, or Delete, you can retrieve them in the same manner. Click Personnel at the top of the Receptors Inc. Master Personnel window and you can select Add, Change, View, or Delete from the drop down menu. The following is examples of using the Change function.

### Last Name

• When you select by Last Name, Change a Record by Last Name screen will appear:

Figure 123: Change a Record by Last Name

EARCH E	MPLOYEE INFORMATION	×
Informatio	on Search	
Field	LastName 💌	LKE Value Condition
	LastName	
	FirstName	
	CardNumber	
	Shift	
	SSN	
	Company	
	Department	Clear Search Get All Search Data
	Division	
	EmployeeID	

• This is an easy fill field. For names that begin with "O", enter "O" in the field. For "OJ", enter that. You can enter as much or as little as you wish. This field is not case sensitive. Once you've entered the required data click **Search** button and the Choose a Person by Last Name will appear displaying all persons with the last name that begins with the search criteria entered above.

#### Figure 124: Change a Person by Last Name

Em	ployee Data -			
Res	ult from			
	Iname	fname	emplid	crdnmb
►	Oliva	Jason	12354	123698

 From here you need to select the desired Last Name by double clicking on it and the record will open.

## **Card Number**

• When calling up records by Card Number, you use the **Change a Record by Card Number** screen to enter the appropriate Card number. You can also enter a range of numbers, entering the beginning number in the "From" field and the ending number in the "To" field.

SEARCH EMPLOYEE INFORMATION							
Informatio	on Search						
Field	CardNumber 💌	LIKE Value Condition					
	LastName						
	FirstName						
	CardNumber						
	Shift						
	SSN						
	Company						
	Department	Clear Search Get All Search Data					
	Division						
	EmployeeID		-				

### **Employee ID**

• Calling up records by Employee ID is much the same as Last Name. Enter the Employee ID, and call up the record. You can also enter partial numbers for searching if required.

Figure 126: Change a Record by Employee ID

SEARCH EMPLOYEE INFORMATION								
Information Search								
Field	EmployeeID 💌	LIKE Value Condition						
	LastName							
	FirstName							
	CardNumber							
	Shift							
	SSN							
	Company							
	Department	Clear Search Get All Search Data						
	Division							
	EmployeeID							

### SSN

• Calling up records by SSN is again the same as Last Name, or Employee ID. Enter the SSN, and call up the record. You can also enter partial numbers for searching if required.

Figure 127: Change a Record by Social Security

🖶 SEARCH	EMPLOYEE INFORMAT	
Informati	on Search	
Field	SSN	LIKE     Value     Condition
	LastName	
	FirstName	
	CardNumber	
	Shift	
	SSN	
	Company	
	Department	Clear Search Get All Search Data
	Division	
	EmployeeID	

## **Working with Records**

• This is an example of the Record screen. It is divided into four major areas:

Figure 128: Blank RISG Master Personnel Record

		y Information Auto Comment Ta			~
Employee Id First Name 'ete	10200 Middle Name	Last Name Rose	Suffix Name		(RICH)
BadgeType	Printed Badge		0 0		
Information Badg	e Card	Access Requireme		rd Envolment Reader	- Ficture -
Card No.	9787171 Issue Date 10/1 0 Effective Date 10/1	1/2011 * View Find	Add Not Used	# for Employee ID	( nume)
Badge Code	Card Status	Special Access Read			
Emboss Number	0 0 O Current Antipossback Exempt Re	Special Access Lev     Bevetor Access	el 0 Browse	Remove	
(Cards Issued)		Barcode	Last Used Used Reade Used Date	d Information r 019-00-000 10/11/2011	Remove Crop Browse Grab
3101111		Use Barrode Numbe	Like Employee ID Used Time	21:48	Last Charge By

### **Master Personnel Record Field Names**

- Card Holder is the area where all critical information about the cardholder is entered.
- <u>Card Information</u> displays all the data of the appropriate card selected in the card number area.
- **<u>Badging</u>** will display the images associated to the selected cardholder.
- In the <u>Cardholder</u> area, there are eight (8) tabs that are used to navigate to the lower portions of the screen.
- The following pages describe the available fields in the Master Personnel File. This section has two additional columns:
  - Ø **Required** indicates that this field is required to enable you to save the record.
  - Ø Variable means that you can change the text or label of the field

### Cardholder Tab Cardholder

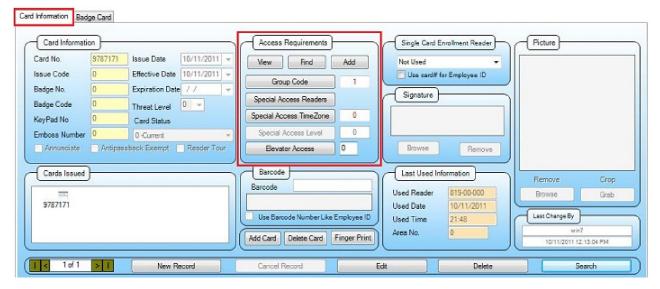
Figure 129: Cardholder Window

Card Holder Employee Information Personal Emergency Information Auto Comment							
Employee Id							
First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	Suffix Name				
BadgeType	Printed Badge Name	Partition Levels					

Field	Description	REQ	VR
Name (First, Middle, Last, Suffix)	Cardholders name (Alpha/Numeric up to 30 characters each)		
Employee ID	MUST ENTER FIELD Alpha/Numeric	Х	
Badge Type	Pull down menu allows you to select any of the formatted Badge layouts		
Printed Badge Name	Used to allow the printing of a name other than sir name on badges. Alpha/Numeric 40 characters.		
Partition Levels	Works in conjunction with the <b>User Level</b> file, There are 5 Partition Levels, 1-5, and 0 for no partition. Levels 1-4 can only access circuit data within their partition and Level 5 can access data in all partitions.		

### **Card Information**

#### Figure 130: Card Information



\* = See this section below for additional information.

 Table 11: Card Information Field Names

Field	Description	REQ	VR
Card No.	Standard 6-digit card number with option for 9 digit cards. Leading zeros not required.	x	
Keypad No.	5 digit number used for keypad readers		
Badge No.	Provided for use if a Badge Number differs from encoded card number.		
Void Code (1-99)	Numbers 1-99 assigned to groups of cards. Groups can be voided or reinstated by command.		

Field	Description	REQ	VR
Issue Date	Card issued on this date. You can press the <b>F3</b> key to set the today's date or you can right mouse click on this box to get a calendar.		
Effective Date	Card effective on this date. You can press the <b>F3</b> key to set the today's date or you can right mouse click on this box to get a calendar.	х	
Expiration Date	Card to expire on this date. You can press the <b>F3</b> key to set the today's date or you can right mouse click on this box to get a calendar.		
Threat Level	Option for Threat Level (1-5)		
Card Status	Multiple Selection of card Status. Allows or Denies access. Must be 0 or 1 for valid access. 1 must have Expiration date.		
Annunciate	If checked cards is annunciated each time it's used.		
Reader Tour	If checked this card can be used for Reader Tour option		
Antipassback Exempt	222222222222222222222222222222222222222		
Base Group code	Group code number used to provide required access for this card.	х	
Special Access Readers	Used on a temporary basis if a person need to have access to a reader that is not in their Base Group code.		
Special Access Time Zone	Time zone that special Access Readers operate under		
Elevator Access Level	Used with the level numbers built in the Elevator Access module.		
Bar Code	Provided for use if printing bar codes on cards.		
Last Used Reader	The last Reader that this card was used at.		
Last Used Date/Time	The last Date and Time that this card was used at a Reader.		
Area No.	Area where card was last used.		

# **Card Information Access Requirement Field**

#### **Giving a Card Access**

• This area is the section that provides the Access requirements to the card. Enter the required Group Code in the Base Group Code field. The Group codes are the levels that were built earlier in the Group Code file

#### View GC (Group Code) button

• You can view the complete Access Level/Time Zone setting for this group code by pressing the **View GC** button. The Group Code window will appear. This window will display whatever Group code is in the Base Group Code field.

#### Figure 131: Card Information View Group Codes

FIND G	ROUP CODE				×
<b>.</b>	1 : Employee Gro 2 : Group Code 2	up			
	2. Group code 2				
		ок	Can	cel	

- The display window gives you a visual representation of the Group Code. Each Access Level/Time Zone pair is displayed. Lines with 0/0 are not used where lines with the plus sign on the left have Readers and Time Zones filled in.
- If you click on the plus sign, the tree will expand and display the assigned Readers and Time Zones programmed.

	Standbardon           ACCESS LEVEL 1: 1 / TIMEZONE 1: 1           READER NO : 000-00-000           Name of Time-Zone : Employee Access           Monday : 24:30 - 05:00, Monday II : 00:00 - 00:00           Tuesday : 24:30 - 05:00, Thursday II : 00:00 - 00:00           Thursday : 24:30 - 05:00, Thursday II : 00:00 - 00:00           Thursday : 24:30 - 05:00, Thursday II : 00:00 - 00:00           Starday : 24:30 - 05:00, Thursday II : 00:00 - 00:00           Starday : 24:30 - 05:00, Sunday II : 00:00 - 00:00           Starday : 24:30 - 05:00, Sunday II : 00:00 - 00:00           Holday : 24:30 - 05:00, Sunday II : 00:00 - 00:00           Holday : 24:30 - 05:00, Sunday II : 00:00 - 00:00           Holday : 24:30 - 05:00, Sunday II : 00:00 - 00:00           Cocess LeveL & 0 / TIMEZONE 3: 0           Access LeveL & 0 / TIMEZONE 3: 0	
--	---	--

Figure 132: View Group Codes – 1

Figure 133: View Group Code - 2

×I

🖻 💱 2 : Group Code 2	
ACCESS LEVEL 1: 1 / TIMEZONE 1: 1	
READER No : 000-00-000	
READER No : HD	
Name of Time-Zone : Employee Schedule	
Monday : 00:00 - 23:59, Monday II : 00:00 - 00:00	
Tuesday : 00:00 - 23:59, Tuesday II : 00:00 - 00:00	
Wednesday : 00:00 - 23:59, Wednesday II : 00:00 - 00:00	
Thursday : 00:00 - 23:59, Thursday II : 00:00 - 00:00	
Friday : 00:00 - 23:59, Friday II : 00:00 - 00:00	
Saturday : 00:00 - 23:59, Sunday II : 00:00 - 00:00	
Sunday : 00:00 - 23:59, Sunday II : 00:00 - 00:00	
Holiday : 00:00 - 23:59, Holiday II : 00:00 - 00:00	
ACCESS LEVEL 2: 0 / TIMEZONE 2: 0	
ACCESS LEVEL 3: 0 / TIMEZONE 3: 0	
ACCESS LEVEL 5: 0 / TIMEZONE 5: 0	
ACCESS LEVEL 6: 0 / TIMEZONE 6: 0	
ACCESS LEVEL 7: 0 / TIMEZONE 7: 0	
ACCESS LEVEL 8: 0 / TIMEZONE 8: 0	

- The first part of the tree (Left Window) will display all of the Readers currently programmed in the assigned Access Level. If you move to the bottom using the down arrow in the scroll bar, after the Reader list is a listing of the Time Zone attached to this level (Right Window). You can continue to open up the Access pairs if needed by continuing to click on the plus signs on the left.
- You can add a Group Code by pressing the **Add Group Code** button. The Add Group Code window will appear.

Add Group Code				×
GROUP CODE	2			
DESCRIPTION	[			
ACCESS LEVEL	AL1 AL2	AL3 AL4	AL5 AL6	AL7 AL8
TIMEZONE	TZ1 TZ2	TZ3 TZ4	TZ5 TZ6	TZ7 TZ8
-ACCESS LEVE	ок			CANCEL
ACCESS LEVE				

• Notice that the Group Code box is automatically initialized to the next number available. You do not have to keep this number you can enter any number you desire. Enter the desired description, Access Level and Time Zone and when you are ready click the OK button and the new Group Code will be saved. If you want to view the new group code, you must enter the group code in the Base Group Code box and then click the **View GC** button.

#### Find GC

• The **Find GC** button is used to locate and display a particular **Group code** that has been previously programmed in the system. Simply click on the **Find GC** button and **Find Group Code** window will appear. Enter the Group Code number in the box and click the OK button and that group will be displayed.

#### Add GC

• The **Add GC** button is used to add a group code. To add a group code simply click on the Add GC button and the Add Group Code window will appear.

Add Group Code		×
GROUP CODE	2	
DESCRIPTION		
ACCESS LEVEL	AL1 AL2 AL3 AL4 AL5 .	AL6 AL7 AL8
TIMEZONE	TZ1         TZ2         TZ3         TZ4         TZ5         T           0 <td< td=""><td>TZ6 TZ7 TZ8</td></td<>	TZ6 TZ7 TZ8
	OK	CANCEL

Figure 135: Add Group Code

• Notice that the Group Code box is automatically initialized to the next number available. You do not have to keep this number you can enter any number you desire. Enter the desired description, Access Level and Time Zone and when you are ready click the OK button and the new Group Code will be saved. If you want to view the new group code, you must enter the group code in the Base Group Code box and then click the **View GC** button.

#### SPECIAL ACCESS READERS

#### Special Access Readers are available for the ANX and AN1 panels only

- The Special Access Reader feature allows you to add Readers to a Cardholder without the need for building an additional group code for minor exceptions. The feature allows access to the Readers over and above the Group Code based on the Special Access Time Zone.
- Adding Special Access Readers to a Cardholder is similar to Access Levels. Click on the **Special Access Readers** window will appear.

#### Figure 136: Special Access Readers

	SPECIAL ACC	ESS READER			3
			]	CARD NUMBER : 9769467	
	Reader 000-00-000	Description Reader 1	ADD READER>	Reader	
			< DELETE READER		
	Special Access	Level 0			
-	Special Access	Timezone 1			
			OK CANCEL	]	

• The box on the left lists all the Readers available in the system. Highlight the Reader you would like to add to this record and click the **Add** Button. Repeat the process until you have selected all the Readers you require. There is one Time Zone available for all of the Readers in the list.

#### **Card Number**

- Before you can add a card number you must enter all of the person's information in the Cardholder field and save the record first.
- You can add another Card by clicking on Add Card a popup window will appear.

#### Figure 137: Confirm to use old card Information

Confirm to use old card information	X
Use last select card number?	
Yes No	

Select "NO" to add another card

#### Figure 138: RISG Master Personnel – Card Information

ard No.	9787171	Issue Date 10/11/2011 -	Vew Find Add Not Used 🕶
sue Code	0	Effective Date 10/11/2011	Group Code 1 Use card# for Employee ID
dge No.	0	Expiration Date 7 /	Circular Circular
dge Code	0	Threat Level	Special Access Readers
yPad No	0	Card Status	Special Access TimeZone 0
nboss Number	0	0-Current -	Special Access Level 0
Annunciate	Antipa	ssback Exempt 📃 Reader Tour	Browse Remove
Cards Issued	)		Barcode Last Used Information Remove Cr
Cards Issued	)		Barcode Last Used Information Remove Cr Barcode Used Reader 019-00-000 Browae Gr

- To delete a card number, edit the card holder then highlight the card number you want to delete and select **Delete** and the card number will be deleted.
- The card number area displays different icons next to the cards according to the card status.

Figure 139: RISG Master Personnel - Card Number

		In THE AT A	L								
	Card No.	9785454		10/11/2011 -	View	v Find	Add	Not Used	-		
	Issue Code	0	Effective Date	10/11/2011 *		Group Code		Use card# f	or Employee ID		
	Badge No.	0	Expiration Date	// *				Signature			
	Badge Code	0	Threat Level	- 80	Spec	ial Access Reader	5		]		
	KeyPad No	0	Card Status		Speck	al Access TimeZon	e 0				
	Emboss Number	0	5 -Expried	÷	Spe	cial Access Level	0			1.2	
	C Annunciate	Antipass	iback Exempt	Reader Tour		Bevator Access		Browse	Remove		
	Cards Issued					code		Last Used In	formation	Remove	Crop
	100	10			Barco	de		Used Reader	019-00-000	Browse	Grab
Is Active	9787171	9785454				_		Used Date	10/11/2011 12		
					Use	Barcode Number L	ike Employee ID	Used Time	21:48	Last Change By	,
is Inactive -					Add Ca	1	Finger Print	Area No.	0	wir	17

## **Employee Information Tab**

Figure 140: Employee Information Window

Card Holder Employee	Information Personal Emergency Information Auto Comment Time Attendance	
Company	Email Email	Full Time Employee
Dept	Work Phone Ext	Contract Employee
Dept No.	Hired Date	Temporary Employee
Dept Location	Termination Date	Employee
Division	Shift	
Job Title		

\* = See this section below for additional information

Field	Description	REQ	VR
Company	Click on the box to enter new Company Name		
Dept. Name *	Alpha/Numeric up to 30 characters		Х
Dept. No.	Alpha/Numeric up to 5 characters		Х
Dept. Location	Alpha/Numeric up to 20 characters		Х
Division	Alpha/Numeric up to 15 characters		Х
Job Title	Alpha/Numeric up to 30 characters		
Shift	Alpha/Numeric up to 5 characters		Х
Email	Alpha/Numeric up to 50 characters		
Work Phone	Phone number formatted with Area Code.		
Extension	Alpha/Numeric up to 5 characters		
Hired Date	Date of Employment. You can press the <b>Down Arrow</b> Button to set the today's date or you can right mouse click on this box to get a calendar.		
Termination Date	Date of Employment. You can press the <b>Down Arrow</b> Button to set the today's date or you can right mouse click on this box to get a calendar.		
Full Time Employee	Check box		
Contract Employee	Check box		
Temporary Employee	Check box		
Employee	Check box		

#### Dept. Name

• You can type the department name in this box or you can click on the **Dept. Name** button and select a department from a pre-created list. To create a list of department names, click on the **Dept. Name** button and the **Menu** window will appear.

Figure 141: Dept. Name main Menu

nt ment Information		1
Data in records Table Value Deptname	Add Edit Delete Close	

• To Add a department name click the Add button and the Menu window will appear.

#### Figure 142: Dept. Name Menu

Repartment Information	×
Data in records Table Value Deptname	Save Cancel Close New Data New Value Maintenance

• Type the department name in the **New Value** box and when you are ready click the **Save** button and you will be returned to the main **Menu** window and the department name will be added to the list.

Figure 143: Dept. Name main Menu - 1

🦧 Department Information	×
Department Information Data in records Table Value Maintenance	Add Edit Delete Close

- To add more departments simply repeat the above.
- To make **Edit** a department name in the list, simply highlight the department name and click the **Edit** button. The **Menu** window will appear and the department name that you selected will appear in the **Menu Option** box. At this time you can make the necessary changes. When you are ready click the **Save** button and you will be returned to the main **Menu** window and the department name will display the changes.
- To **Delete** a department simply highlight the department to be deleted and click the **Delete** button and that department will be deleted from the list.

#### Lock and Key

- Lock and Key is used track keys given to personnel by Key Number, Issue Date. Expiration Date and Company. Lock and Key is used for information only and will not generate an alarm on the Expiration date.
- To assign a Key to a Personnel record click on the Lock and Key button and the Lock and Key window will appear.

#### Figure 144: Lock and Key

Key Control Entry				-			Carlos and a	
Keys - Employee Informa	tion	List of Un-assigne	ed Keys			1		
Key ID:		Key ID	Lock Number		Description			
Look No .:								
Description:								
ssue Date:								
xpire Date:								
Assign to employee								
Employee ID:								
Card Number:								
First Name:								
Last Name:								
Company:								
Save	Edit De		Cancel			J		
st of assigned Keys								
ry ID Lack Number	Employee Name	Employee ID	Employee Card No.	Key Description	Issue Date	Expire Date	Company	Last Changed By

• Notice that there are no Keys listed. Therefore you will need to create a key. To do this click on the **New** button and enter in the information.

Figure 145: Lock and Key - 1

Keys - Employee Inform	ation	List of Un-assi	igned Keys					
Key ID: 1		Key ID	Lock Number		Description			
Lock No.: 1		1						
Description: Front Door								
sue Date: 01/01/20	11							
pire Date: 12/31/20	11							
Assign to employee		-						
Employee ID: 10100								
Card Number: 977109	8							
First Name: Ian								
Last Name: White								
	tors Inc							
Last Name: White		relete	Cancel					
Last Name: White Company: Recept		elsto	Cancel					
Last Name: White Company: Recept		lekte Employee ID		Key Description	Issue Date	Expire Date	Сотралу	Last Changed By
Last Name: White Company: Recept Save ist of assigned Keys	Edt D			Key Description	Issue Date	Expire Date	Сотралу	Last Changed By
Last Name: White Company: Recept Save	Edt D			Key Description	Issue Date	Expire Date	Company	Last Changed By
Last Name: White Company: Recept Save st of assigned Keys	Edt D			Key Description	Issue Date	Expire Date	Company	Last Changed By
Last Name: White Company: Recept Save st of assigned Keys	Edt D			Key Description	Issue Date	Expire Date	Company	Last Changed By
Last Name: White Company: Recept Save st of assigned Keys	Edt D			Key Description	Issue Date	Expire Date	Company	Last Changed By

- Type in the Key number in the **Key No.** box.
- Type in the Lock No. in the Lock No. box.
- Type in a Description.
- Enter the date that the key was issue to the person in the **Issue Date** box. You can right click on the box and a calendar will appear.
- Enter the date that the key is to be returned in the **Expire Date** box. You can right click on the box and a calendar will appear.
- When you are ready click the Save button and the entry will display in the List of assigned Keys.

Figure 146: Lock and Key - 2

Keys - Employee Inform	ation	List of Un-assign	ed Keys					
Key ID: 1		Key ID	Lock Number		Description			
Lock No.: 1								
Description: Front Door								
ssue Date: 01/01/20	41							
xpire Date: 12/31/20	11							
Assign to employee								
Employee ID: 10100								
Card Number: 977105	6							
First Name: lan								
Last Name: White	tors Inc							
Last Name: White		ielete	Cancel					
Last Name: White Company: Recep		rekte	Cancel					
Last Name: White Company: Recep Save List of assigned Keys	Edit D	Employee ID	Employee Card No.	Key Description	Issue Date	Expire Date	Сотрану	Last Changed By
Last Name: White Company: Recep Save List of assigned Keys	Edit D			Key Description Front Door	Issue Date 01/01/2011	Expire Date 12/31/2011	Company Receptors Inc	Last Changed By win7
Last Name: White Company: Recep Save List of assigned Keys	Edit D	Employee ID	Employee Card No.					
Last Name: White Company: Recep Save List of assigned Keys	Edit D	Employee ID	Employee Card No.					
Last Name: White Company: Recep Seve .ist of assigned Keys	Edit D	Employee ID	Employee Card No.					
Last Name: White Company: Recep Save List of assigned Keys	Edit D	Employee ID	Employee Card No.					

- To add more keys simply repeat the above.
- To make **Edit** a key in the list, simply highlight the key and click the **Edit** button. At this time you can make the necessary changes. When you are ready click the **Save** button.
- To **Delete** a key simply highlight the key to be deleted and click the **Delete** button and that key will be deleted from the list.

#### Company 1, 2, and 3

- Select company 1, 2, or 3.
- You have two (2) options to enter the company name:
  - **1.**) You can type it in.
  - 2.) If you used the Company function to generate a list of companies, you can click the **Select** button and the **Company Information** window will appear.

#### Figure 147: Company 1, 2, and 3

Card Holder Employee Information Personal	Emergency Information Auto Comment Time Attendance
Name Of Contract Company Employed By	Company 01     Company 03       Receptors Inc     Image: Code       Code     Image: Code       Code     Image: Code
From To	Company 02     Mail Station       Code     Approved Date

- § Select a company from the list and all of the company information will be displayed.
- § When you are ready click the **OK** button and you will be returned to the **Information** window and the company name will be displayed in the selected company box.

## **Personal Tab**

Figure 148: Personal Window

C	ard Holder Emplo	oyee Information Personal	Emergency Information Auto Co	omment   Time Attendance	e		
	Address				Physica	al	
	Street	ļ	Home Phone		Sex	Height	
	City	State	Cell Phone		Hair	Weight	lbs
	Zip Code		SSN		Eyes		
			Date of Birth		Ethnic	•	

**Table 13: Personal Window Field Names** 

Field	Description	REQ	VR
Address			
Street	Alpha/Numeric up to 36 characters		
• City	Alpha/Numeric up to 20 characters		
State	Formatted 2 characters		
Zip Code	Alpha/Numeric up to 11 characters		
Home Phone	Phone number formatted with Area Code		
<ul> <li>Social Security Number</li> </ul>	Alpha/Numeric up to 13 characters		
Date Of Birth	Works with the Calendar on drop down option		
Physical			
• Sex	Formatted 2 with options		
Hair	Add a color of the hair		
• Eyes	Add eye color		
Ethnics	Add ethnics		
Height	Alpha/Numeric up to 5 characters		
<ul> <li>Weight</li> </ul>	Alpha/Numeric up to 4 characters		

# **Emergency Tab**

Figure 149: RISG Master Personnel - Emergency

Card Holder	Employee Info	ormation Pers	onal Emerger	CY Information	Auto	Comment	Time Attendar	nce		
Cor	Contact Personal Info Medical Information									
Contact	Name			Relationship					Medical Company	
Street				Home Phone						
City		State		Work Phone					Medical Information	
Zip Code	,									

**Table 14: Emergency Window Field Names** 

Field		Description	REQ	VR
Conta	ct Personal Info			
Ø	Contact Name	Alpha/Numeric up to 30 characters		
Ø	Relationship	Alpha/Numeric up to 21 characters		
Ø	Street	Alpha/Numeric up to 15 characters		
Ø	Home Phone	Phone number formatted with Area Code		
Ø	Work Phone	Phone number formatted with Area Code		
Ø	Address	Alpha/Numeric up to 20 characters		
Ø	City	Alpha/Numeric up to 15 characters		
Ø	Home State	Formatted state		
Ø	Zip Code	Formatted zip code		
Medic	al Information			
Ø	Medical Company	Alpha/Numeric up to 50 characters		
Ø	Medical Information	Alpha/Numeric up to 70 characters		

### **Information Tab**

Figure 150: RISG Master Personnel - Employee Information

Card Holder Employee Information Personal	Emergency Information Auto Comment Time Attendance	
Name Of Contract Company          Employed By         From       To	Company 01   Code   Code   Code   Code   Code   Code   Code   Code   Mail Station   Extension   Approved Date   09/09/2011	

#### **Table 15: Employee Information Window Field Names**

Field	Description	REQ	VR
Name of Contact Company	Alpha/Numeric up to 30 characters		х
Employed By	Alpha/Numeric up to 30 characters		Х
From	Works in Calendar		
То	Works in Calendar		

# **Sponsor Info**

Figure 151: Sponsor - Information Window

Card Holder Employee Information Personal	Emergency Information	n Auto Comment	Time Attendance
Name Of Contract Company  Employed By  From To 7 7 V 7 V 7 V	Company 01 Code Company 02 Code		Company 03 Code Sponsor Information Sponsor Name Company Mail Station Extension Approved Date 09/06/2011

#### Table 16: Sponsor Information Window Field Names

Field	Description	REQ	VR
Sponsor Name	Alpha/Numeric up to 30 characters		Х
Company	Alpha/Numeric up to 30 characters		Х
Mail Station	Alpha/Numeric up to 13 characters		Х
Extension	Alpha/Numeric up to 5 characters		Х
Approved Date	Date formatted. You can press the <b>F3</b> key to set the today's date or you can right mouse click on this box to get a calendar.		x

## Auto Tab

#### Figure 152: Auto Information Window

Card Holder	Employee Information	Personal	Emergency	Information Auto	Comment		
License 1				License 5		Assign 1	
License 2				License 6		Assign 2	
License 3				License 7		]	
License 4				License 8		]	

Field	Description	REQ	VR
License Fields	8 Fields, Alpha/Numeric up to 12 characters each.		Х
Assign 1 and 2	2 Fields, Alpha/Numeric up to 5 characters each.		Х

# **Comments Tab**

#### Figure 153: Comments Window

Card Holder E	mployee Information Personal Emergency In	rmation Auto Com	ment	
Comment 1		Comment 6		]
Comment 2		Comment 7		]
Comment 3		Comment 8		]
Comment 4		Comment 9		]
Comment 5		Comment 10		

#### Table 18: Comments Window Field Names

Field	Description	REQ	VR
Comments	10 Fields, Alpha/Numeric up to 70		Х
	characters each.		

# Company

Company is a feature that provides information on companies (other than the end user) whose personnel will be given access to facilities protected by the system. This file interacts with the Master Personnel module by allowing the operator to add Company information to a cardholder record by simply clicking on the Company buttons in the Master Personnel Record.

## **Data Entry**

- First you must launch the **Company** file. To do this click on **Admin** at the top of the Odyssey software management window and select **Administration** from the drop down menu.
- On the Master Personnel Tab, select on Employee Information sub tab:

Figure 154: Company List Records

Company Name List Company Name Company Number	Company Information	
Company Name       Address       Street       City       State       Zip Code       Phone       Fax       Close		Company Code     Company Number       Company Name

• The List a record window will be active only at this time. Enter a Company Code if you wish to view a single Company Record. If you leave the **Please enter a Company code** box blank and

click the **Save** button, all of the programmed Company Records (if any) will list in the **RISG Company Information – [Company1]** window.

Figure 155: RISG Company Information

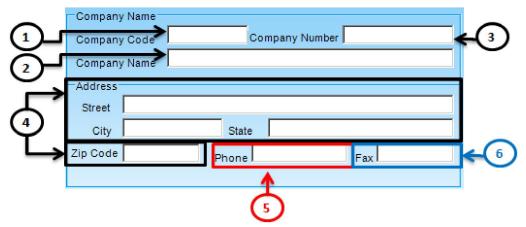
Company Information	<u>x</u>
Company Name List Receptors Inc	Company Name       Company Number       11         Company Name       Receptors Inc         Address       Street       23954 Medison Ave.         City       Torrance       State       CA         Zip Code       90505       Phone       3103785116       Fax       3103756671
	Add Edit Delete Close

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete a Company record.

### **Building a Company Record**

Because of the design of the module, Company records are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a **New** record, the **Add a record** window will appear:

Figure 156: Add a Record



### **Field Names**

The Company Circuit Module contains the following field names:

- 1). Company Code: 11 Character, Alpha/Numeric that uniquely identifies the Company record in the system
- 2). Company Name: Company Name is entered here.
- 3). Company No.: Optional field provided for entry of an additional identifier for this Company.
- 4). Company Address: Physical address of the company.
- 5). Telephone: Company telephone number
- 6). Fax: Company fax number.
- Sample of a completed Company Record:

Figure 157: Sample Company Record

nformation	<u>×</u>
Company Name List Receptors Inc	Company Name       1       Company Number       11         Company Name       Receptors Inc       11         Address       Street       23954 Medison Ave.         City       Torrance       State       CA         Zip Code       90505       Phone       3103785116       Fax       3103756671
	Save Cancel Close

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete a Company Record.

## **Adding Signers**

For each company you create, you can add authorized Signers to that company record. Signers are individuals that are authorized to approve actions performed by their respective company's employees. For example, a Signer could approve applications for access credentials (cards), and only the signatures of Signers in the Receptors database would be accepted.

• To add a **Signer**, open the **Change a record** form for the desired company and click on the **Add Signers** button. The **Enter Authorized Signers** window will display:

Figure 158: Enter Authorized Signers



## **Field Names**

The Enter Authorized Signers window contains the following field names:

- 1). Signature Box: Automatically shows the signature on the box once being inserted.
- 2). Browse: Browse for the card holder signature.
- 3). Remove: To remove signature.

When you have finished adding Signers to the Signers Table, click OK to save and exit the module.

### **Copying Records**

• You can copy from one Company Record to the next by doing any of the following:

- Ø Highlight the Company Record t you want to copy from and Select **Open**, and the **Change a record** window will appear. **OR**
- Ø Highlight the Company Record you want to copy from and Select New and the Add a record window will appear. OR
- Ø Right click on the Company Record you want to copy from and select **Add** from the pop down menu and the **Add a record** window will appear.
- Make sure to change the **Company Code**, as well as the data entries, and press the **OK** button.
- The edited Company Record will be listed in the **RIS Company Information [Company1]** window as a new record.

# **Search Profile**

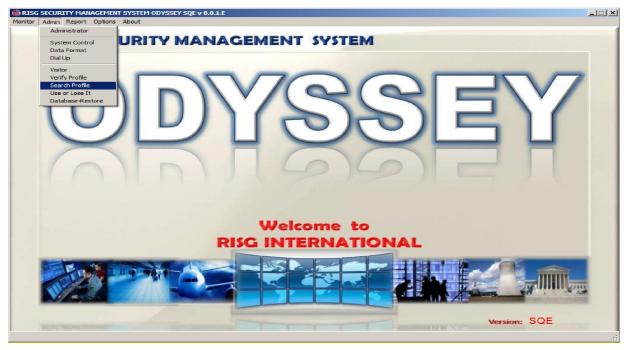
The profiler is a module that allows the lookup of records in the Master Personnel files without the need for access to the records themselves. Users can call up a display only window that will provide pertinent information regarding the cardholder and the saved image.

# **Starting the Profiler**

First you must launch the **Verify Profile**. To do this click on **Admin** at the top of the Odyssey software management window and select Verify **Profile** from the drop down menu.

• After selecting the Verify Profile module, the Verify Profile window will display:

Figure 159: RISG Search Display



You can perform a record lookup in one of 4 methods by clicking on the Profile pull down menu:

**Last Name** allows a filter by Last Name. This is an easy fill window. If you enter "A", the system will pull up all last names that start with the letter A. Entering "AN" pulls up everything that matches "AN" such as Anderson, Andrews, and so on.

**Card Number** allows you to call records by the card number. You can also enter a range of card number if needed.

**Employee Id** pulls the record by the Employee ID field. Like the card number, you can enter a range. **License** will search all of the Auto license fields in the Database. This too is an easy fill window so as to allow the lookup of partial license plate numbers.

REV.-A RELEASED 08/2011 PUBLICATION# 5567

#### Figure 160: Display Profile by License#, Employee ID, Last Name, or SSN

Search	Search
Search By License	Search By Employee ID
Value	Value
Search Clear	Search Clear
Search	Search
	Search
Search By Last Name	Search By SSN

After you have entered the search criteria, click **Search** and the search will commence. If there is only one match, the Profiler will display the appropriate data on the Profile screen. If there are multiple matches, the window below will display:

Figure 161: Choose a Person By Last Name

Search	
Search By La	st Name 💌
Value Olin	va
Search	Clear
Employee ID	Last Name
1	Oliva
1	
12354	Oliva
12354	

• To choose the desired record, simply double click on the record or highlight it and click OK. The profile window is displayed with the saved image of the cardholder, and up to 20 fields of the database record.

#### Figure 162: Profile

earch		1	S	ignature
earch By Last			200	ion Okiva
Value Oliva	3	A DE	Last Name	oliva
Search	Clear		First Name	Jason
			Employee ID	123456
mployee ID	Last Name Oliva		Social Security	9368
2354	Oliva		Company	KBEI
		Picture	Department	Test Department
			Division	Test Division
			License1	963658
			License2	654258
			Height	5'6
			Weight	1201bs
			Eye Color	Brown
			Hair Color	Black
			Sex M/F	м
			Street	Westbank Road
			City	Pasig City
			State	NCR
			Zip Code	1609

# **Use or Lose Report**

The Receptors Use Lose application allows you to generate lists of both active cards not used since a specified date and/or lists of cards that have been previously deactivated for non- use. The ability to deactivate and/or reactivate selected records from these lists or to create a printout of the records is provided. To use the listing functions you must have permission to List Master Personnel Card File in the passkey command levels. To activate or deactivate records you must have permission to Update Personnel Card File in the passkey command levels.

- First you must launch the Lose or Use Report. To do this click Admin at the top of the RISG Security Management System window and select Lose or Use Report from the drop down menu.
- To begin, select Action from the main menu. You will be given a choice to search for either cards not used since a specified date or cards that have been deactivated since a specified date.

#### Figure 163: Use it or Lose it

Search Active Rec Search Inactive Re			2011-06-08 ard Number	Search	De-activate Clear	Print	Help	
Division	Last Used	IDate Tim	e i	Last Used Reader	Status	Last Change Date	Last Change By	Seq No
_						111		

#### Figure 164: Select Date Range

				28 4	29	<b>30</b>	31	1	2	3
				21	22	23	24	25	26	27
				14	15	16	17	18	19	20
Card Number	Last Wallie		T II ST NAME	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Card Number	Last Name		First Name	31	1	2	3	4	5	6
				Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sa
Search Inactive	Records	Sor	t By Car	4		Aug	ust, 2	2011		Þ
Search Active R	lecords	Sea	irch Since	2011-	-08-30	Ú.	-			Sea
				_			[oday	: 8/30	/201	1
				4	5	6	7	8	9	1
				28		30	31	1	2	-
				21	22	23	24	25	26	2
				14	8	9	10 17	11 18	12 19	1
Card Number	Last Name		First Name	31	1	2	3	4	5	(
				Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	S
Search Inactive	Records	So	rt By Ca	4		Aug	just,	2011		Þ

Once you have chosen one of these two options and entered a search date and sort options a list of applicable records will be created from which you may generate a printout and/or select records to deactivate and/or reactivate.

### Figure 165: Use it or lost it results

Search Active R		Search Since 2011- Sort By Card Numb		Search Re-activate	Clear	Print Help		
ard Number	Last Name	First Name	Employee ID	Company1	Company2	Title	Department	Di
411482	Oliva	Jason	12345					
820145	Lamsin	Joey	213987					

### **De-activate cards**

To deactivate cards not recently used from the list, select the records you wish to deactivate by clicking anywhere on the row. You may select multiple records by using the Ctrl and/or Shift keys. When you have finished selecting the records select Action from the main menu then select Deactivate Selected Records from the pop up menu. A message box will appear showing the number of records deactivated. Click OK to return to the initial menu.

*NOTE:* Deactivated records will have their pass status set to 5 – Expired. The field panels will be automatically updated. The change date will be set to the current date/time and the changed by field set to the currently logged in user. This action will be audited as a Master Personnel Update by the currently logged in user for all selected records.

<ul> <li>Search Active R</li> <li>Search Inactive</li> </ul>		Search Since 2011- Sort By Card Numb		earch De-activate	Clear	Print Help		
Card Number	Last Name	First Name	Employee ID	Company1	Company2	Title	Department	Di
411482	Oliva	Jason	12345					
820145	Lamsin	Joey	213987					
			Upd	late Complete.				
				OK				

#### Figure 166: Use Lose

### **Re-activate cards**

To reactivate cards that have been previously deactivated; first generate a list of deactivated cards then select the cards you wish to reactivate by clicking anywhere on the row. The Ctrl and Shift keys may be used to select multiple records. When done selecting records select Action from the main menu then select Reactivate Selected Records from the pop up menu. A message box will appear showing the number of records reactivated. Click OK to return to the initial menu.

*NOTE:* Reactivated records will have their pass status set to 0 – Current or 1- Temporary dependent upon whether the record is assigned an expiration date. The panels will be automatically updated and the change date set to the current date/time and changed by field set to the currently logged in user. This action will be audited as a Master Personnel Update by the currently logged in user for all selected records.

#### Figure167: Use it or Lose It

) Search Active R ) Search Inactive I		Search Since 2011-0 Sort By Card Numb		Search Re-activate	Clear	Print Help		
Card Number	Last Name	First Name	Employee ID	Company1	Company2	Title	Department	Di
411482	Oliva	Jason	12345					
820145	Lamsin	Joey	213987					
			Upd	date Complete.				
				ОК				

## **Printing records**

Once you have created a list of either active records not used since a specified date or a list of records deactivated since a specified date you may create a printout by selecting File from the main menu and Print or Print Preview from the pop up menu.

### Figure168: Use it or Lose It Report

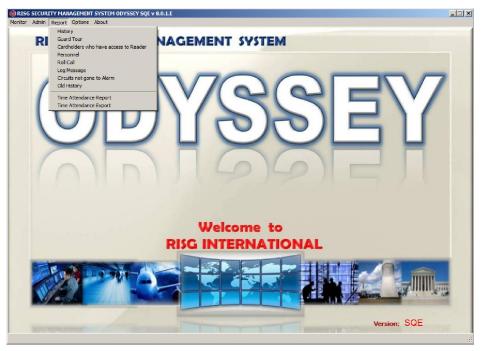
Main Report		N 🖓 🛛	<i>m</i> #* •							
User	Lose It									
CardNo	LastName	FirstName	ID	Company1 Company2	Title	Department	Division	LastUsed	Time	LastReader
411482 820145	Oliva Lamsin	Joey Joey	12345 213987						0	0
<							]			>
Current Page No.	: 1		Т	otal Page No.: 1		Zooi	n Factor: 10	0%		

# Reports

• The reports module is the interface for retrieving history transactions from the system. There are also specialized reports for creating a list of cards allowed through a specific reader, and custom Personnel Reports.

## **Opening the Reports Module**

• The Reports module is located in the Receptors Folder in the Start menu.



- You can also open the Reports from the **RISG Security Management System** using the Reports button if you desire.
- Once you select the Report module, the dialog box listed below will appear:

### Figure 170: The Report Menu

Report	
Histor	ry
Guard	d Tour
Card	holders who have access to Reader
Perso	nnel
Roll C	all
Log M	lessage
Circui	ts not gone to Alarm
Old H	istory
Time	Attendance Report
Time	Attendance Export

- From here you can either select the following reports:
   (Description of following reports are discussed later in this section)
  - Ø History (Current History)
  - Ø Guard Tour
  - Ø Cardholders who have access to Reader
  - Ø Personnel
  - Ø Roll Call
  - Ø Log Message
  - Ø Circuits not gone to Alarm
  - Ø Old History
  - Ø Time Attendance Report
  - Ø Time Attendance Export
- When you are finished with the module, you can exit the program.

# **History / Old History**

• After selecting the History, or Old History module, the form listed below will display. Using this form, you will make the appropriate selections for the type of History transactions you require.

Figure 171: History Report Window

🖗 RISG Report Builder Wizard ver.	
Period Time         Select Tour No           Start Date: Time         05/08/2011 00:00         End Date: Time         06/08/2011 00:00         Image: Comparison of the select Tour No	
Transaction Type       Image: Constraint of the second of th	Report By
Transaction Selecting         Select Transaction List         Select All Description         Transaction         Selected Transaction         Selected Transaction         Transaction         Selected Transaction         Transaction         Selected Transaction         Transaction         Selected Transaction         Transaction         Selected Card No.         Card Number         1. ACCESS GRANTED         3. READER ANNUNCIATED         4. CONTROL ACCESS VIOLATION         5. INVALID SYSTEM CODE         6. ID NOT IN MEMORY         7. INVALID TIME ZONE         9. INVALID TIME ZONE         11. HARD ANTIPASSBACK VIOLATIO         12. WORKSTATION LOGIN FAILED         13. OPT ANTIPACOMACY VIOL VIOL	
Process Preview Clear Export to Excel	

### **Start/Stop Time Frame**

• The first criteria selection is the time frame you wish to search under.

Figure 172: History Report Criteria Start Date/Time, Stop Date/Time

Period Time		_		Select Tour No
Start Date: Time	05/08/2011 00:00	End Date: Time	06/08/2011 00:00	
Transaction Type Card Transaction Card Transaction Transaction Selecting Select Transaction Transaction Selected Transaction	May. 201           Sun Mon Tue Wed TI           24         25         26         27         2           1         2         3         4         5           (1)         9         10         11         1           15         16         17         18         1           22         23         24         25         26           29         0         31         1         2           29         30         31         1         2           7         Today:         6/8/20         20         20	Image: New York         Finite         Satt         Ustern Diag         U	June, 2011 Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu 29 30 31 1 2	Pri         Sort Report By           3         4           10         11           17         18           24         25           1         2           1         2           1         2           1         2           1         2           1         2           2         1
12. WORKSTATIO	ED INCIATED ESS VIOLATION EM CODE 40RY 3S LEVEL 20NE AD NO GNED STATUS ID SSSBACK VIOLATIO	Lard Number 411482 820145 9769467		000-00-000

- You will notice a pull down for both the **Start Date/Time** and the **Stop Date/Time**. Using these pull downs, you can use the Calendar to select the date and time you wish to both start the search, and end it.
- When you open the module, both of the times will default to the current time and date. Make sure you always select a different start time. If you leave it as the defaulted the search will be for the same minute and not return any real data.

# **Transaction Type**

The next selection is the Type of transactions you need on your search.

- All Transactions return all of the transactions recorded during the selected time frame
- Card Transactions are only the records that correspond to cards.
- File Updates are records having to do with operator transactions in the files such as "Circuit File Updated".
- Commands Executed will only return manual commands sent by operators.
- System Diagnostic transactions are records such as "Controller Not Reporting", or "Trunk Line Failure".
- Workstation Login/Logout transactions are records the log in and log out of the workstation
- Alarm Transaction records all transactions such as "ID not in memory, invalid access level and invalid time zone

### Figure 173: History Report Selected Transactions

🍘 RISG Report Builder Wizard ver.	x
Period Time	Select Tour No
Start Date:Time 07/30/2011 00:00 T End Date:Time 08/30/2011 00:00 T	
Transaction Information         Transaction Matching         Transaction Description         Find         Transaction Getting         Value Found         Value Found         1. ACCESS GRANTED         2. ID ANNUNCIATED         3. READER ANNUNCIATED         4. CONTROL ACCESS VIOLATION         5. INVALID SYSTEM CODE         6. ID NOT IN MEMORY         7. INVALID ACCESS LEVEL         8. INVALID TIME ZONE         9. INVALID ACCESS LEVEL         10. VOID/UNASSIGNED STATUS IC         11. HARD ANTIPASSBACK VIOLATI         12. WORKSTATION LOGIN FAILED         13. SOFT ANTIPASSBACK VIOLATI         15. CONTROLLER TAMPER CLOSE         16. DOOR OPEN DETECTED         17. DOOR CLOSED AFTER DOD         18. NOT USED         19. NOT USED         10. NOT USED         10. NOT USED         12. 7008 PEOWER ON RESET	Sort Report By
Clear OK	

• Selected Circuits allows searches on up to 10 specific Circuits. You would select the radio button and then enter the desired Circuit numbers in the boxes provided.

## **Running the Report**

• When you are ready to run the report you can either select **Print** or **Preview**. Print will send the report directly to the printer after you select which printer to use. Preview will bring the report to the screen before printing.

Figure 174: Sample History Transaction Report

ſ	t								
	Transaction : - Card No : -	port History :All Transactio	on		Date : 09/1	1/2011 23:38 and 10/11/2	011 23:38		
	Circuit : - Date / Time	Transaction	Card No.	Last Name	First Name	Circuit	Type	User	
	8/29/11 21:04	USER LEVEL FILE UPDATED	0	ris.		ris	Inset		
	9/29/11 21:05	SYSTEMPOWER ON RESET	301989888						
	8/29/11 21:05	CONTROLLER POWER ON RESET	0	ris		020	Inset		
	9/29/11 21:05	CONTROLLER CODE DWLD COMPLETED	20			SQL_SUCCESS			
	9/29/11 21:07	TRUNK LINE FAILURE	0	<b>fis</b>		02	Inset		
	9/29/11 21:07	USER LEVEL FILE UPDATED	0	win7		win7	Inset	win7	
	9/29/11 21:07	RDR DATA FORMAT UPDATED	0			14	Inset	System	
	9/29/11 21:08	RDR DATA FORMAT UPDATED	0			26	Inset	System	
	9/29/11 21:08	RDR DATA FORMAT UPDATED	0			32	Inset	System	
	9/29/11 21:08	RDR DATA FORMAT UPDATED	0			34	Inset	System	
	9/29/11 21:08	RDR DATA FORMAT UPDATED	0			35	Inset	System	
	9/29/11 21:08	RDR DATA FORMAT UPDATED	0			35	Inset	System	
	9/29/11 21:08	RDR DATA FORMAT UPDATED	0			37	Inset	System	
	9/29/11 21:08	RDR DATA FORMAT UPDATED	0			42	Inset	System	
	9/29/11 21:08	TRANSACTION FILE UPDATED	0			11	Update		
	9/29/11 21:08	TRANSACTION FILE UPDATED	0			13	Update		
	9/29/11 21:08	TRANSACTION FILE UPDATED	0			11	Update		
	8/29/11 21:08	TRANSACTION FILE UPDATED	0			13	Update		
	9/29/11 21:08	LAN-CONTROLLER/RSC FILE UPDATED	0			20	Inset	win7	
	8/29/11 21:08	GIRGUIT FILE UPDATED	0			020-00-000	Inset	win7	
	9/29/11 21:08	CIRCUIT FILE UPDATED	0			020-00-000	Update	with7	
	9/29/11 21:08	GIRGUIT FILE UPDATED	0			020-00-000	Update	win7	
	9/29/11 21:08	TRANSACTION FILE UPDATED	0			11	Update		
	9/29/11 21:08	TRANSACTION FILE UPDATED	0			13	Update		
	9/29/11 21:08	CIRCUIT FILE UPDATED	0			020-00-004	Inset	win7	
	9/29/11 21:08	CIRCUIT FILE UPDATED	0			020-00-008	Inset	win7	
	8/29/11 21:08	CIRCUIT FILE UPDATED	0			020-00-012	Inset	win7	
	8/29/11 21:08	CIRCUIT FILE UPDATED	0			020-00-008	Update	win7	
	9/29/11 21:08	CIRCUIT FILE UPDATED	0			020-00-004	Update	win7	
	9/29/11 21:08	CIRCUIT FILE UPDATED	0			020-00-000	Update	win7	

- From here you can verify the request has returned the data you require and how many pages are required.
- If you are ready to print, you can select the Print button and finish the report.

### Preview

Figure 175: Parts of the History preview screen

	You can select the magnification	of the preview wind	ow here		
🎒 Show Repo	rt 🗸				
1	н ч 🕨 н 🔄 🗃 💏 ий? -				
Main Report		-			
		8/30/2011			
		Date	Description		
		8/3/11 5:50 8/3/11 5:50	CONTROLLER TAM		
		8/9/11 3:20	CONTROLLER TAM		
		8/9/11 7:31	CONTROLLER TAM		
		8/9/11 8:18 8/9/11 8:18	CONTROLLER TAM		
		8/10/11 3:00	CONTROLLER TAM		
		8/25/11 10:30	CONTROLLER TAM		
rrent Page No.	: 1	Total Page No.: 1		Zoom Factor: 100%	
		4			

This section indicates how many pages that are in your report , what page is being previewed.

## Card Holders who have Access to Reader

The List Card For Specified Reader report module allows you to enter a specific Reader and receive a list of all card numbers allowed access to this reader.

# **Running the Report**

To run the report, click on the Card Holders who have Access to Reader button on the Report Menu. To generate report select highlight reader click on button to confirm your selected reader or hit on button to select all the readers. To preview the report click on preview button Preview

Figure 176: List Card For Specified Reader NO. Entry Window

🛞 Cardholders who have ac	cess to Reader	
Reader List Reader Description Reader Found 000-00-000. Reader 1	Reader Selected	Find
Sort by Card No.	Clear	Preview

• The following is a sample of the report:

Figure 177: List Cards For Specified Reader Report

() Show	Report								
<b>d</b>		▶ N 🔄 🛛 🏦	<b>#</b> -						
Main Report									
	6/9/2011		Cardholder	s who have a	ccess to Rea	der	Paç	je 1 of 1	
	Card No.	First Name	LastName	Company	Department	GroupCode	Special Level	Special Reader	E.
	820145	Joey	Lamsin			1	1	Т	
	9769467	Joey	Lamsin			1	0	т	
			~						2
Current Pag	je No.: 1		Total Page No.: 1		Z	oom Factor: 100	%		

## Personnel

Personnel report allows you to generate a report by Id Status, Expire Date, Effective Date, Group Code, Department, Company and Access Level.

# **Running the Report**

• When you select the **Personnel List** button on the **Report Menu**, the following criteria entry window will appear:

#### Figure 178: Personnel Report Window

	mation Report Wizard ver 🛛 🔀
ID Status	Like O = O <> O > O < value
Expire Date	
🔲 Expire Date	Start Date 05/09/2011 💌 End Date 06/09/2011 💌
Effective Date	Start Date 05/09/2011  End Date 06/09/2011
Effective Date	
Group Code	
Group Code	Like      C =      C      C      Value
Department	
Department	
Company	
Company	Like      O =      O <>      O < value
Access Level	
C Access Level	
Sort by En	ployee ID Clear Preview

- To enter data requests, you check the appropriate box next to the field you want to query. On the right side of the form, you would enter the data you want to search for.
- The Date fields allow reporting of dates Greater Than, Equal to, or Less Than the selected date.

#### Figure 179: Personnel List Report

Ø	Show Report									
	23 23 K 4 ▶ N 20 20 MB A12 -									
	Main Report									
	6/9/2011			F	Personnel L	ist			<	
	Employee ID	Last Name	First Name	Company	Department	ID Status	Card Number	Group Code	Effective Dat	
	1234	Lamsin	Joey			0	9769467	1	06/07/2011	
	12345	Oliva	Jason			0	411482	0	06/07/2011	
	213987	Lamsin	Joey			0	820145	1	06/02/2011	
	<			IIII					>	
C	urrent Page No.: 1		Total	Page No.: 1		Zoom	Factor: 100%			

• Once you have entered the data you wish, you can select the preview window to check for the correct return. Check the information in the next section for tips on operating the preview window.

# **Roll Call Report**

This module is used in conjunction with Area number and it allows you to generate a report that will show which people are in a given area, at that given time or in the entire facility.

• To run the report, click on the **Roll Call** button on the **Report Menu**:

### Figure 180: Roll Call Report window

🐞 Roll Call Report Wizard	x l
Area Matching	
Area Description	Find
Area List Detail	
Area Found	Area Selected
0 1 2	» >
	<
	,
Sort Report By Area No.	Clear Preview

### **Running the report**

- Enter the desired Area number in the box or if you desire to list all records leave the box blank
- Highlight your selected area then hit on button or button to confirm.
- Then click on Preview button to run report.

Figure 181: Roll Call Report window

🍘 Show Report	-	The state of the s	Anti Grandigi Staatingi						
Be Book 4 ► F Be Be Book 60 +									
ROLLCALL Repo	ort	Area Number = 0							
Number Card No. Ar	ea No. Area Descrip	tion	LastName	FirstName					
1 9787171 2 12345 3 9785454 4 97771098	0 Not assign t 0 Not assign t 0 Not assign t 1 Area 1	an Area an Area	Rose White	Pete Ian					
Current Page No.: 1	Total Pa	ige No.: 1	Zoom Factor: 100%						

• Roll call report window will show all information.

# Log Message Report

• Log message reports all made log messages:

Figure 182: Log Message Report

🛞 Log Message	×
Date Time	
From : 5/ 9/2011	▼ To: 6/ 9/2011 ▼
Sort by Date	Clear Preview

• Enter the desired date to Preview to view the report results.

## **Circuits not gone to Alarm**

The Circuits not gone to Alarm allows you to generate a report of alarm points or readers with door contacts that have not gone into alarm within the last 30 days.

# **Running the Report**

• To launch this report, click on the Circuits not gone to Alarm button on the Report menu. The Circuits not gone to Alarm window will appear:

Figure 183: Circuits not gone to Alarm Window

🎯 Circuits not gone to Alarm Report Wizard ver.8.0.1.E 🛛 🛛 🔀						
Circuit Info						
Start Date:Time	05/09/2011 💌	End Date: Time	06/09/2011 💌	Find		
Type of Circuit		📃 🔹 Circuit De	scription			
Circuit List	Input Circuits Reader Circuits					
Circuit Found			Circuit Selected			
		>>				
		>				
		<				
		~~				
Sort by	<b>_</b>		Clear	Preview		

• To run the report, select Input Circuits or Reader Circuits. You can Print directly to the printer, or Preview the report.

Figure 184: Circuits not gone to Alarm Report

🛞 Show Report			
	1 🗆 A11 A17 -		
Main Report			~
6/9/2011 	Date 06/07/2011	Page 1 of 1 Time 2:45:00 am	
Current Page No.: 1	Total Page No.: 1	Zoom Factor: 100%	~

### **Time and Attendance Report**

Records time in and out of the card holders on the readers.

## **Running the Report**

• **Time and Attendance** can be launched by clicking on the **Time and Attendance** button on the Report Menu. To run report select date range and select time attendance circuit.

Figure 185: Time and Attendance – Date Range

Date	Period	
From	2011-09-13 💌	00:00
То	2011-10-13 💌	23:59
Deste		

#### Figure 186: Search the Card

					Time	& Attenda	nce Repo	rt				
ate Period			ional Fields									
					Search Er	nployee/s						
om 2011-09-13	▼ 00:00 ÷		Department			Info.: CardNumber	- Event Nue	nber/Name 💌 va	alue 9771098			
2011 10 12	▼ 23:59 ÷		Shift						inde farriege			
	- 20.00							C ALOUR C	All In/Out C All Ir	VOut Summary		
asic Field			Company		-		initiary to Antin	is Arour is	An involution of the second	,		
Card No 🔽	First Name 🔽 La	st Name	Division		- Sear	ch Prin	t Report	Clear				
	Lon											
Working Tir	ne 💯 Allowar	ice Days										
<b>Norking Time</b>	Report Options											
				-	_		_	Well Sold and a second second	-			
Shift Hours	Total	Time 🔽	Lunch Time	Break Time	Meeting	Time 🗌 Offsi	te Time 🗌 🗸	Vorking Hours	Lost Hours			
								1				
	Card Number	First Name	Last Name	Department	Date	Shift Hours	Time In	Time Out	Total Time	Lunch Time	Break Time	Lost Hours
0100	9771098	Ian	White	Department	9/29/2011	08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Break Time	Lost Hour
0100	9771098 9771098	Ian Ian	White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Break Time	Lost Hour
0100 0100 0100	9771098 9771098 9771098	Ian Ian Ian	White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	вгеак пте	Lost Hour
0100 0100 0100 0100	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Ian Ian Ian Ian	White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	втеак тіте	Lost Hour
0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian	White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Break Time	Lost Hours
0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan	White White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:31 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Break Time	Lost Hour
0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 010	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Tan Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian	White White White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	break lime	Lost Hour
0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 010	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan	White White White White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:32 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Break Time	Lost Hour
0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 010	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan	White White White White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:32 PM 3:32 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Break Time	Lost Hour
0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 010	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan	White White White White White White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:32 PM 3:34 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Break lime	Lost Hours
0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 010	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian	White White White White White White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:32 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Break Time	Lost Hour
0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 010	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan	White White White White White White White White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:32 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Break Time	Lost Hours
0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 010	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian	White White White White White White White White White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:32 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:46 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Break lime	Lost Hour:
0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 010	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian	White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:32 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Break Time	Lost Hour:
0100 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian	White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:345 PM 3:345 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Break Time	Lost Hour:
0100 000 000 000 000 0000	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian	White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:35 PM 3:51 PM 3:52 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	break time	Lost Hour:
0100 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian	White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:32 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:46 PM 3:46 PM 3:47 PM 3:48 PM 3:52 PM 3:52 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	break time	Lost Hour:
0100 000 000 000 000	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian	White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:35 PM 3:51 PM 3:52 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	break time	Lost Hour:
0100 0100	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian	White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:32 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:46 PM 3:46 PM 3:47 PM 3:48 PM 3:52 PM 3:52 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	break lime	Lost Hour
0100 0100	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan	White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:32 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:46 PM 3:47 PM 3:51 PM 3:51 PM 3:52 PM 3:52 PM 3:53 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	break time	Lost Hour
0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 0100 010	9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian Ian	White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	0 8:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:33 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:33 PM 3:32 PM 3:32 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:44 PM 3:46 PM 3:45 PM 3:55 PM 3:52 PM 3:52 PM 3:53 PM 4:01 PM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Dreak lime	Lost Hour
Employee ID Employee ID 10100 1010 101 1010 1010 1010 10	9771096 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098 9771098	Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan Tan	White White	Department	9/29/2011 9/29/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 9/30/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011 10/3/2011	0 8:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00 08:00-17:00	Time In	9:26 PM 9:56 PM 12:23 PM 12:23 PM 12:24 PM 3:31 PM 3:32 PM 3:32 PM 3:34 PM 3:34 PM 3:46 PM 3:46 PM 3:51 PM 3:55 PM 3:52 PM 3:52 PM 3:52 PM 3:53 PM 11:40 AM	Total Time	Lunch Time	Dreak lime	Lost Hours

# **Running the Report**

To run the report, click on the **print button**:

Figure 187: Time and Attendance Report Window

Ta_previews					
💼 🖅 🚰 н ч 🕨 н 🖓 🗷 🕅 АВ -					
Main Report					
					<b>^</b>
Saturday, June 11, 2011					
Employee ID First Name Last Market	lame Department	Card Number Date	e Time In	Time Out	Total Time
123456 Joey Lamsi	n	9769467 06/1	1/2011 2:27:20	2:28.47	00:01:27
					-
					•
Current Page No.: 1	Total Page No.: 1		Zoom Factor: 100%		

• From here you can print Time and Attendance report.

### **Guard Tour Reports**

Guard Tour Reports allows you to generate a report of any desired tour.

## **Running the Report**

• Guard Tour Reports can be launched by clicking on the Guard Tour Reports button on the Report Menu.

Figure 188: Guard Tour Report Window

🍘 Guard Tour Wizar	d ver.	×
Guard Tour Information		
Start Date: Time	05/09/2011 💌 End Date: Time 06/09/2011 💌	
Guard Tour Matching	Find	
Guard Tour List		7
Guard Tour Found	Guard Tour Selected	
	>>	
Sort Report By	ate	

• From here you will enter in the Guard Tour Number that you desire to generate a report for.

### Figure 189: Guard Tour Report Window Start Date/Time, Stop Date/Time

🍘 Guard Tour Wizard	ver.							×
Guard Tour Information								
Start Date:Time	05/09/2011	🔳 En	d Diate: Tir	ne 06	6/09/2011	-		
Guard Tour Matching		May, 20		•		June, 2	011	F
Guard Tour List Guard Tour Found	1 2 8 <b>9</b> 15 16 22 23	26 27 3 4 10 11 17 18 24 25 31 1	28 29 5 6 12 13 19 20 26 27 2 3	Sat 30 7 rd T 14 21 28 4	12 13 19 20 26 27 3 4	Tue Wed 31 1 7 8 14 15 21 22 28 29 5 6 Jay: 6/9/	2 3 10 16 17 23 24 30 1 7 8	Sat 4 11 18 25 9
Sort Report By	e	•			Previev	v	Clear	1

- You will notice a pull down for both the pull down for the **Start Date/Time** and the **Stop Date/Time**. Using these pull downs, you can use the Calendar to select the date and time you wish to both start the search, and end it.
- When you open the module, both of the times will default to the current time and date. Make sure you always select a different start time. If you leave it as the defaulted the search will be for the same minute and not return any real data.

# **Optional Features**

- The following pages describe Options available in the Odyssey system. These options are modules that add features to the baseline files making up the system. They are not required and are only used to enhance the operation of your software.
- Not all of these options operate without first purchasing additional software modules. Additionally, some of the choices must be first enabled in the baseline software. Please consult your **Receptors Representative** prior to attempting these options.

# **Radionics Circuit**

Radionics is an optional feature that allows circuits to be setup that report from a Radionics 6500 / 6600 series receiver. These Alarms will then in turn report as standard alarms to the Alarm Display.

## **Data Entry**

- First you must launch the **Radionics Circuit** file. To do this click on **Options** at the top of the **RISG Security Management** System window and select **Radionics Circuits** from the drop down menu.
- After selecting the Radionics Circuit module, the List a circuit window will appear:

#### Figure 190: List a Circuit(s)

	onic Circuits		Þ
Radionic Circ	Line-Account-Zone No.	Description Alarm Type	Alarm Dis
-			
<			>
User Circuit Audit Printe		Ccount Zone No. Description	
Primary Dis		Secondary Displays 0 0 Priority 0 Display Maps 0 0	0
CCTV Alam		Changed By	
		New Edit Delete Save	Cancel

• The List a circuit window will be active only at this time. Enter a Radionics Circuit Number if you wish to view a single Radionics Circuit Record.

Figure 191: RISG Radionic Circuits

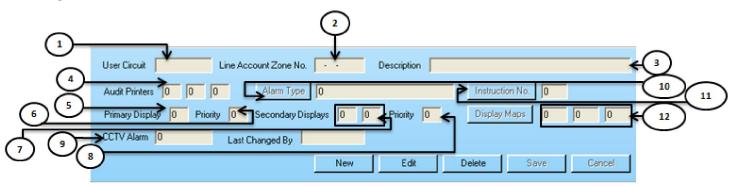
ine-Account-Zone No.	Description	Alarm Type	Alarm Display 1	Last C
RAD	Pharmacy Main Entrance Door	Intrusion	1	
			_	
				•

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete a Radionics Circuit record.

### **Building a Radionics Circuit**

Because of the design of the module, Radionics Circuits are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a **New** record, the **Add a Circuit** window will appear:

Figure 192: Field Names



# **Field Names**

The Radionics Circuit Module contains the following field names:

- 1). User Circuit: 12 Character, Alpha/Numeric that identifies the Circuit to the system.
- 2). Line-Zone-Account No.: A Numeric number made up of the Radionics Line Number, Account Number and Zone Number.
- **3). Description:** Description of the Circuit. This text descriptor will appear in the Alarm Display in the Description window, and in the Status display.
- **4).** Audit Printers: Allows assignment of up to three Audit Printers that will record the transactions from this circuit. Number corresponds to the Printer number in the System Control File
- **5). Primary Display:** Number of the Primary Workstation that activity on this Circuit is to be routed to. Corresponds to the Alarm Display number in the System Control File.
- **6). Priority (Primary):** Allows a priority level for the Primary display. Entries from 0-10 with 10 being the highest priority.
- 7). Secondary Displays: 2 fields available, number of other Workstation(s) that activity on this circuit is to be routed to. Corresponds to the Alarm Display number in the System Control File.
- 8). Priority (Secondary): Allows a priority level for the Secondary displays. Entries from 0-10 with 10 being the highest priority.
- **9). CCTV Alarm No.:** Works in conjunction with the CCTV interface. Corresponds to the alarm number used by the various CCTV controllers. Through the CCTV interface, the system will send this number via Serial port when an alarm condition occurs on this circuit
- **10). Alarm Type:** Categorizes the type of Circuit. You can pull from the list or add your own up to 16 Alpha/Numeric characters. These names will appear in the Alarm Type line in the Alarm detail window.
- **11). Instruction No.:** This Numeric entry corresponds to the Instruction number in the Instruction file. The Alarm Display will display this instruction in the Alarm Acknowledge window.
- **12). Display Maps:** 3 fields available, works in conjunction with the Map program. These numbers correspond to the map number(s) this circuit will display on. Clicking on the Display Maps button will display the list of maps programmed in the system.
- Sample of a completed Radionics Circuit Record:

#### Figure 193: Add a Circuit

User Circuit RAD Line Account Zone No. 40-1021-048 Description Pahmacy Main Entrance Door
Audit Printers 1 2 0 Alarm Type Intrusion Instruction No. 4
Primary Display 1 Priority 7 Secondary Displays 2 0 Priority 5 Display Maps 4 5 6
CCTV Alarm 220 Last Changed By Admin
New Edit Delete Save Cancel

## **Copying Records**

- You can copy from one Radionics Circuit to the next by doing any of the following:
  - Ø Highlight the Radionics Circuit you want to copy from and Select **Open**, and the **Change a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Highlight the Radionics Circuit you want to copy from and Select **New** and the **Add a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Right click on the Radionics Circuit you want to copy from and select **Add** from the pop down menu and the **Add a record** window will appear.

- Make sure to change the **Radionics Circuit Number**, as well as the data entries, and press the **OK** button.
- The edited Radionics Circuit will be listed in the **RISG Radionics Circuits [Zckt1] window** as a new record.

# **Group Display**

Group Display allows you to group several workstations under a group that you want to have alarm transactions displayed on. This module works in conjunction with Reader, Input Output circuits file and the Transaction file. This group number can be entered in the Primary or the Secondary Display box in the Reader, Input and Output circuits file. It also can be entered Display1 or Display2 box of the Transaction file.

# **Before getting started**

• All of the Servers and Workstations must have been entered in the System Control file as Alarm Displays before continuing. (See the System Control section of this manual).

# **Data Entry**

- First you must launch the Group Display module. To do this click on Options at the top of the RISG Security Management System management window and select Group Display from the drop down menu.
- After selecting the Group Display module, the List Alarm Display Groups and RISG Alarm Display Groups [Gcrt1] windows will appear.

#### Figure 194: List Alarm Display Groups

🍘 Group Display		
Group Display List		
Group No.	Description	Last Changed B
<	III.	>
Group Number	Description	
Last Changed By 🛛 🖡	Admin	
1 : SERVER 2 : (comments) 3 : (comments) 4 : (comments) 5 : (comments)	Add	
5 : (comments) 6 : (comments) 7 : (comments) 8 : (comments) 9 : (comments) 10 : (comments) 11 : (comments)	Remove	
	New Edit Delete Save	Cancel

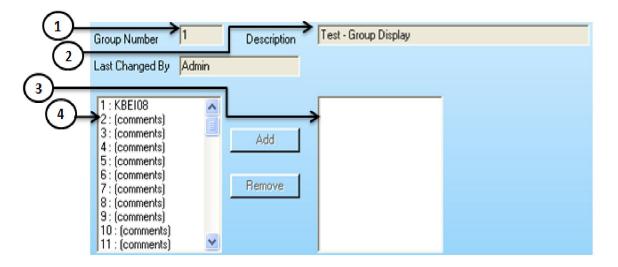
• The List Alarm Display Groups window will be active only at this time.

#### Figure 195: RISG Alarm Display Groups – [Gcrt1]

Group No.	Description	Last Changed B
1	Server and Workstation	Admin

- At this point, you can Add, E, View, Sort or Delete a record.
- You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a new record, the **Add a LAN-AN1/RSC/GP1** window will appear:

Figure 196: Add a Group Display



### **Field Names**

- **1.) Group Number** is the number that you desire to define this group of Displays to be used in the Reader, Input, Output circuits and the Transaction files.
- 2.) Description is the general description of the Group Display up to 40 characters.
- **3.)** Group Displays is the Workstations that you have selected from the Alarm Display window that will be a part of this group.
- **4.)** Alarm Display is a list of all Servers and Workstations programmed in the System Control file and are available for Alarm Displays.

# Adding a Record

### Figure 197: Add a Group CRT

Group Number	32	Description	All Wrks	
Last Changed By	Admin			
1 : KBE108 2 : (comments) 3 : (comments) 4 : (comments) 5 : (comments) 6 : (comments) 8 : (comments) 9 : (comments) 10 : (comments) 11 : (comments)		Add Remove	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	

- Enter any number that you desire in the Group Number box. This number should not be duplicated.
- Enter the description for this Group in the **Description** box.
- Highlight the Alarm Display(s) in the Alarm Display box that you desire to be a part of this group and click the Add button. You can either highlight one at a time or you can highlight multiple Alarm Displays sequentially by clicking on the first one that you desire and while holding down the Shift key, click on the last one in the desired range. If the Alarm Displays are not in sequence you can click on the first one and while holding down the Ctrl key click on the other desired Alarm Displays. When you have selected all of the Alarm Displays click on the Add button and the selected Alarm Displays Type number will appear in the Group Displays box.
- If you desire to remove an Alarm Display(s) from the Group Display box, simply highlight the Alarm Display(s) and click the **Remove** button and they will be removed from the Group Display box
- When you are ready click the **OK** button to save the group.

# **Changing Records**

• To change existing records, in the **RISG Alarm Display Groups – [Gcrt1]** window, open the required **Group No.** One method is to select the desired record by double clicking on the circuit.

(You cannot change the Group Number. in a record.)

#### Figure 198: Change a Group Display 1 0f 1

Group Number	32 Description	All Wiks
Last Changed By	Admin	
1 : KBEI08 2: (comments) 3: (comments) 4: (comments) 5: (comments) 6: (comments) 7: (comments) 9: (comments) 10: (comments) 11: (comments)	Add Remove	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

• At this point you can make the necessary changes and when you are ready click the OK button and the changes will be saved.

# **Deleting Record(s)**

• Highlight the selected Group Display and hit on Delete button.

# Viewing Record(s)

• You cannot change records when Viewing records. Follow the procedures for Adding Record(s) to View records. Instead of selecting Open from the File menu select View or when right clicking on a highlighted record select View from the drop down menu.

# **Open/Close Area**

The Open/Close Area file is an optional feature that allows you to define a group of Readers and/or Input Circuits as an Area. You can create a path into the Area to access the initiating device (Reader or Input). You can enable or disable the Area with a Card transaction, Input activation or a Manual Command from a Workstation. An attempt to close an Area with any device in the Area unsecured will result in an Alarm.

# **Data Entry**

- First you must launch the Open/Close Area file. To do this click on Options at the top of the RISG Security Management System window and select Open/Close Area from the drop down menu.
- After selecting the **Open/Close Area** module, the **List Open/Close Area Records** window will appear:

Figure 199: List records

	Description	Controlling Circuit	Area Input	Area Output	Area Name	Alarm Output	Last Changed By
	Test on Open: Close Area	000-00-000	000-00-002	000-00-001	TestArea	000-00-001	Admin
Area Nun	nber 1 Area Name TestArea	Description Test	on Open:Clos	e Area			Detail
	ut 000-00-002 Controlling Circuit 000-00-0		ea Output	000-00-001	A	arm Output	00-00-001
Area Inp			ner Output	000-00-001		dy Area(Y:N) 🔽	_

• The List Open/Close Area Records window will be active only at this time. Enter an Open/Close Area Record Number if you wish to view a single Open/Close Area Record.

### Figure 200: RISG – Open/Close Area

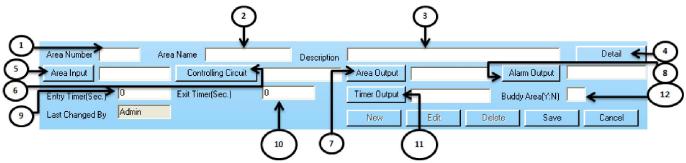
Area No.	Description	Controlling Circuit	Area Input	Area Output	Area Name	Alarm Output	Last Changed By
1	Test on open/Close	000-00-000	000-00-002	000-00-001	Test Are	000-00-001	Admin

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete an Open/Close Area Record.

# **Building a Open/Close Area Record**

Because of the design of the module, Open/Close Area Records are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a **new** record, the **Add an Open/Close Area Record** window will appear:

### Figure 201: Add a record



### **Field Names**

The Open/Close Area module contains the following field names:

- 1). Area Number: The number assigned to this Open/Close Area Record. This is the number used call up a specific Open/Close Area Record.
- 2). Area Name: Descriptive Name of the Area. 8 alphanumeric characters maximum.
- 3). Description: Text description of the Area. 70 alphanumeric characters Maximum
- 4). Detail: Set up the Path Circuit, Controlled Circuits and Authorized Card.
- **5).** Area Input: Input Circuit that initiates the Entry Timer when opening the Area and cancels the Exit Timer when closing the Area. Clicking on the Area Input button will display a list of Inputs programmed in the system.
- 6). Controlling Circuit: Input or Reader circuit that opens or closes the Area. Clicking on the Controlling Circuit button will display a list of Readers or Inputs programmed in the system.
- 7). Area Output: Circuit turns on when Area is opened and turns off when the Area is closed. Clicking on the Area Output button will display a list of Outputs programmed in the system.
- 8). Alarm Output: This output turns on when any Controlled Circuit within a closed Area is activated. Clicking on the Alarm Output button will display a list of Outputs programmed in the system.
- **9).** Entry Timer: Amount of time, in seconds, allotted to open an Area from the Controlling Circuit after the Area Input has been activated.
- **10). Exit Timer:** Amount of time, in seconds, allotted to activate or exit through the Area Input after closing the Area with the Controlling Circuit.
- **11). Timer Output:** Output circuit activated when Entry Timer or Exit Timer have expired before the Open/Close process is successfully completed. Clicking on the **Timer Output** button will display a list of Outputs programmed in the system.

- **12).Buddy Area:** Does not work at this time. For future use. When set to Y(es), two authorized cards, presented within a prescribed time interval, are required to perform the Open or Close Area process. When set to N(o), a single Authorized Card can be used.
- When data entry for the above screen is completed, click on the **Detail** button to continue with the Area configuration. The **Area Detail**, **Path Circuits** window will be displayed:

Figure 2	02: Area	Detail –Path	Circuit
----------	----------	--------------	---------

1	Area Detail Area Number 2 Path Circuit Controlled Circuits Authorized Card	×
2-	Input Circuits List Path Circuit O00-00-002 Add O00-00-002 Remove	
	OK Cancel Help	

The **Path Circuit** window contains the following field names:

- **1).** Area Number: The number assigned to this Open/Close Area Record. This is the number used call up a specific Open/Close Area Record.
- 2). Input Circuit List: List of all Input Circuits available to be configured as Path Circuits.
- 3). Path Circuit: List of Reader and Input Circuits that have been selected as Path Circuits.
- When data entry for the above screen is completed, click on the **Controlled Circuits** tab to continue with the Area configuration. The **Area Detail**, **Controlled Circuits** window will be displayed:

#### Figure 203: Area Detail – Controlled Circuits

$\sim$	🁹 Area Detail		×	
(1)-	Area Number 2			
	Path Circuit Controlled Circuits Authorized Card			
2-	Input Circuits List 000-00-002 Add Remove	Note-Max 32 Per Controller Controlled Circuits 000-00-00 000-0000		-4
3_	Reader Circuits List			
	OK Cancel	Help		
5				

• The Controlled Circuits window contains the following field names:

- **1). Area Number** is the number assigned to this Open/Close Area Record. This is the number used call up a specific Open/Close Area Record.
- 2). Input Circuit List: List of all Input Circuits available to be configured as Controlled Circuits.
- **3). Reader Circuit List:** List of all Reader Circuits available to be configured as **Controlled Circuits**.
- 4). Path Circuit: List of Reader and Input Circuits that have been selected as Controlled Circuits.
- When data entry for the above screen is completed, click on the **Authorized Cards** tab to continue with the Area configuration. The **Area Detail**, **Authorized Card** window will be displayed:

Figure 204: Area Detail – Authorized Card

1-	Area Detail	×
2-	Path Circuit Controlled Circuits Authorized Card Authorized Card	
3_	Remove	
	OK Cancel Help	

- The Authorized Card window contains the following field names:
  - **1).** Area Number: The number assigned to this Open/Close Area Record. This is the number used call up a specific Open/Close Area Record.
  - 2). Card Number: Entry field for Card Number to be selected as Authorized Cards.
  - 3). Authorized Cards: List of all Card Numbers configured as Authorized Cards.

### **General Operation**

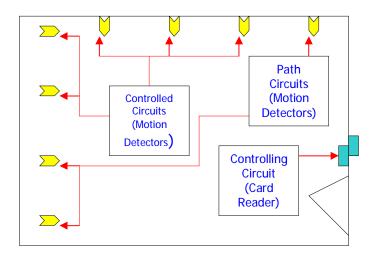
There are multiple methods of use for the Open/Close software option:

### **Outside the Area**

• You can have a **Controlling Circuit** on the outside of the Area with no **Path Circuits**, or **Entry/Exit** time. In this mode, you would secure all of the **Controlled Circuits** and exit the area. Once the Area is secure, you would activate the Area by **Input**, or **Reader**. This would then **Close**, or Enable all of the **Controlled Circuits** on the inside of the Area. Any violation of the controlled circuits would turn on the **Alarm Output**. Using this method, an operator can be allowed to Open or Close the Area by Command from a Workstation.

### Inside the Area

Below is a block diagram of a typical controlled area. The doorway is in the lower right corner with the Controlling Circuit Reader inside the door. The motion detectors indicated have been designated in the Path Circuit screen. The rest of the detectors are listed in the Controlled Circuit screen. There is also a door position switch installed on the door, which has been designated as the Area Input. The Entry/Exit timers have been programmed to 45 seconds.



### **Closing the Area**

All Controlled Circuits must be first secured prior to closing the Area. When ready, the
Controlling Circuit is activated. This will start the Exit Timer allowing 45 seconds to exit and
secure the Area Input (in this case by closing the door). Alarms from the Path Circuit are
ignored during the Exit time, but act as any other controlled circuit after the Area is closed. If
the Area is not properly closed before the Exit Timer expires, an "Area Closed Failed" alarm will
be generated, and the Timer output will turn on. After the Area is closed, any violation of the
controlled circuits would turn on the Alarm Output.

### **Opening the Area**

• By opening the door, the **Area Input** will be activated which in turn, will start the **Entry Timer**. Again, the **Path Circuit** is ignored during the Entry time. You will have 45 seconds to activate the **Controlling Circuit** to Open the Area.

Note: Commands from the Workstation are not allowed if using this mode.

- You can copy from one Open/Close Area Record to the next by doing any of the following:
  - Ø Highlight the Open/Close Area Record you want to copy from and Select **Open**, and the **Change a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Highlight the Open/Close Area Record you want to copy from and Select **New** and the **Add a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Right click on the Open/Close Area Record you want to copy from and select **Add** from the pop down menu and the **Add a record** window will appear.
- Make sure to change the **Record number**, as well as the text entries, and press the **OK** button.
- The edited Open/Close Area Record will be listed in the **RISG Open/Close Area [Area1]** window as a new record.

# **Extended Door Time**

The Extended Door Time is a feature that allows you to access a Reader Door for extended periods of time without generating an Alarm. The time can be set to up to 300 minutes.

## **Data Entry**

- First you must launch the **Extended Door Time** file. To do this click on **Options** at the top of the **RISG Security Management System** window and select **Extended Door Time** from the drop down menu.
- After selecting the **Extended Door Time** module, the **List an Extended Door Time** window will appear:

Figure 206: List an Extended Door Time

Name	Description	Reader	Output
Test	Test on Extendede Door Time	000-00-000	000-00-001
<			
Name	Description	Last Changed By	
Read		Extended Timer 0	<u></u>

The List a Extended Door Time window will be active only at this time. Enter an Extended Door Time Name if you wish to view a single Extended Door Time Record. If you leave the Please enter an Extended Door box blank and click the OK button, all of the programmed Extended Door Time Record (if any) will list in the RISG Extended Door Times Record – [Extended Door Time1] window.

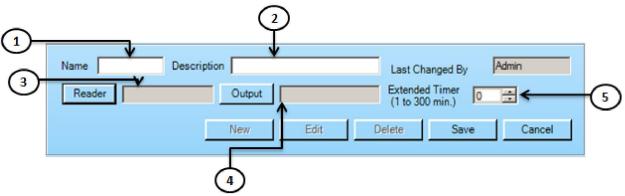
Figure 207: RISG Extended Door Time Record

Name	Description	Reader	Output
fest	Test on Extendede Door Time	000-00-000	000-00-001
			3

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete an Extended Door Time Record.

### **Building a Extended Door Time**

Because of the design of the module, Extended Door Time Records are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a **New** record, the **Add an Extended Door Time** window will appear:



## **Field Names**

The Extended Door Time Module contains the following field names:

- **1). Name:** The name assigned to this Extended Door Time Record. Maximum 4 alphanumeric characters
- **2). Description:** Text description for the Extended Door Time Record. This will display in the Extended Door Time window of the Status screen when active. 70 alphanumeric characters maximum.
- **3). Reader:** Designated Reader for this Extended Door Time Record. Clicking on the **Reader** button will display a list of Readers programmed in the system.
- 4). Output: Designated Output that will turn on when this Extended Door Time Record is active. Clicking on the Output button will display a list of Outputs programmed in the system.
- 5). Extended Timer: The maximum time this Extended Door Time Record is allowed to remain active until an Alarm is generated. Extended time range is 1-300 minutes. (*Future feature all Extended Door Times are set by Keypad entry at the door.*)

# **Copying Records**

- You can copy from one Extended Door Time Record to the next by doing any of the following:
  - Ø Highlight the Extended Door Time Record you want to copy from and Select **Open**, and the **Change a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Highlight the Extended Door Time Record you want to copy from and Select **New** and the **Add a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Right click on the Extended Door Time Record you want to copy from and select **Add** from the pop down menu and the **Add a record** window will appear.
- Make sure to change the **Extended Door Time Name**, as well as the data entries, and press the **OK** button.
- The edited Extended Door Time Record will be listed in the **RISG Extended Door Time –** [Extended Door Time Record 1] window as a new record.

# **Guard Tour**

Guard Tour is an optional feature that allows Tour points to be set up throughout a facility. A Card Reader is used to Start and Stop the Tour and can be associated with an Output Circuit that indicates that the Tour is active. Input Circuits make up the individual Tour points and are associated with an Output Circuit that is turned on when the Tour point is activated. Each Tour transaction is recorded in History.

# **Data Entry**

First you must launch the **Guard Tour** file. To do this click on **Options** at the top of the **RISG Security Management System** window as shown below:

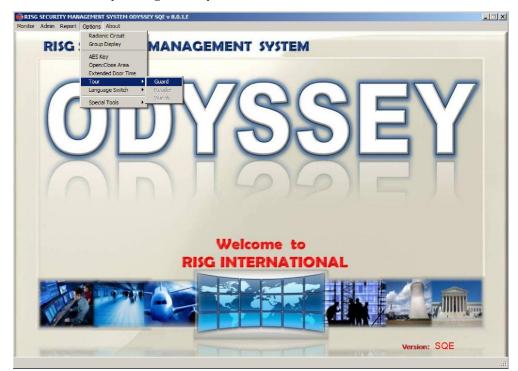


Figure 209: RISG Security Management System – Guard Tour

• After selecting the **Guard Tour** module, the **List a (Guard Tour) Record** window will appear:

Figure 210: RISG List records

🚱 Guard Tour	$\mathbf{\times}$
Guard Tour List	
Tour No. Reader Output Description Last Changed By	
1 000-00-000 000-00-001 Test Guard Tour Admin	
Tour Number 1 Description Test Guard Tour	
Tour Beader 000-00-000 Tour Dutput 000-00-001 Last Changed By Admin	
Select Tour Input And each's Assosiated Output System Input System Output Assigned Inputs Assosiated Outputs	
System rupus         System output         Assigned inputs         Associated outputs           000-00-002         000-00-001         000-00-002         000-00-001	
Add	
And	
Remove	
New Edit Delete Save Cancel	
New Edit Delete Save Cancel	

• The List a (Guard Tour) Record window will be active only at this time. Enter a Guard Tour Number if you wish to view a single Guard Tour Record.

### Figure 211: RISG Tours

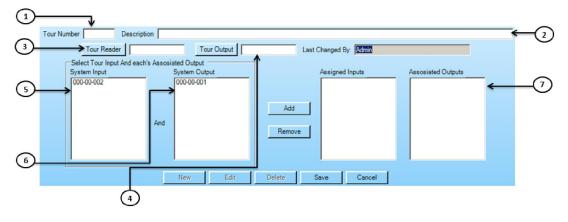
	Guard Tour List							
Tour No.	Reader	Output	Description	Last Changed By				
1	000-00-000	000-00-001	Test Guard Toour	Admin				

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete a Guard Tour set.

### **Building a Guard Tour**

Because of the design of the module, Guard Tours are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a **New** record, the **Add a record** window will appear:





### **Field Names**

The Guard Tour Module contains the following field names:

- **1). Tour Number:** The number assigned to this Guard Tour Record. This is the number used (along with the Description) to identify the Tour in the Status Display when it is active.
- 2). Description: Text files that are used to describe the Tour. This verbiage is used (along with the Tour Number) to identify the Tour in Status, when it is active. 30 Alpha Numeric characters maximum.
- **3).** Tour Reader: This Reader Circuit is used to initiate the Guard Tour. Clicking on the Tour Reader button will display a choice of Readers programmed in the system.
- 4). Tour Output: This Output Circuit is used to indicate that this Tour is active when turned on. Clicking on the Tour Output button will display a choice of Outputs programmed in the system.
- 5). System Inputs: These are the Input Circuits that are available as Guard Tour Assigned Inputs.
- 6). System Outputs: These are the Output Circuits available to be associated with Assigned Inputs.
- 7). Assigned Inputs Associated Outputs: This field lists the Assigned Tour Inputs and their Associated Outputs for this Tour Record.
- Sample of a completed Guard Tour Record:

Figure 213: Sample Guard Tour

### **General Operation**

A Guard Tour is activated by a valid Card Read at the **Tour Reader**. When the Tour is started, the **Tour Output** will turn on. A user can go to each tour station to activate the associated Input point. When the **Input Point** is activated, the associated **Output Point** will turn on until the **Input point** is deactivated. After all stations have been activated, a valid Card Read through the **Tour Reader** will complete the Tour. There is no specific sequence of Tour Stations or time intervals.

## **Copying Records**

- You can copy from one Guard Tour to the next by doing any of the following:
  - Ø Highlight the Guard Tour you want to copy from and Select **Open**, and the **Change a** record window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Highlight the Guard Tour you want to copy from and Select **New** and the **Add a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Right click on the Guard Tour you want to copy from and select **Add** from the pop down menu and the **Add a record** window will appear.
- Make sure to change the **Guard Tour number**, as well as the data entries, and press the **OK** button.
- The edited Guard Tour will be listed in the **RISG Guard Tour [grdt1] window** as a new record.

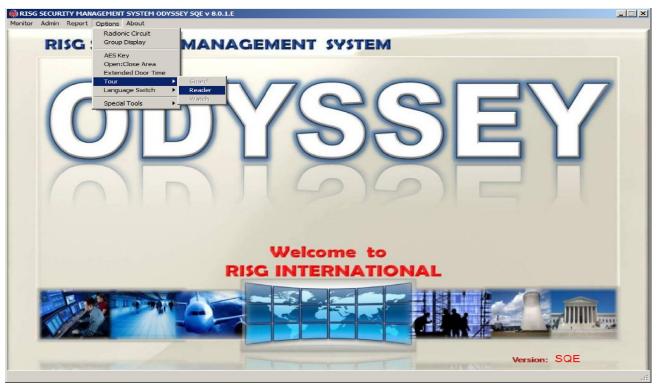
# **Reader Tour**

Reader Tour is an optional feature that allows Reader Circuits to be used as Tour stations throughout a facility. A Card Reader is used to start the Tour. The Reader Tour is a Timed Tour and all readers must be accessed in the pre-determined time for the Tour to be completed. Valid access credentials (cards) can be assigned as Tour cards in the Master Personnel File. A Reader Tour has a maximum time of 1440 minutes (24 hours). There is no specific sequence of Card Readers and no Interval timing.

# **Data Entry**

First you must launch the **Reader Tour** file. To do this click on **Options** at the top of the **RISG Security Management System** window as shown below:

Figure 214: Receptors Security Management System Tour - Reader Tour



• After selecting the **Reader Tour** module, the **List a Reader Tour Record** window will display:

Figure 215: List records

our No.	Description	Start Reader	Timer	Last Changed By	
	Test on Reader Tour	000-00-000	25	Admin	
ur Numb	er Start Reader	Tour Timer	Last Cha	nged By	
	System Reader 000-00-000	Sele Add	cted Readers		
		Remove			

• The List a (Reader Tour) record window will be active only at this time. Enter a Reader Tour Number if you wish to view a single Reader Tour Record.

### Figure 216: RISG Reader Tour

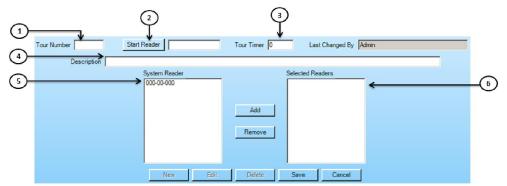
Tour No.	Description	Start Reader	Timer	Last Changed By	
1	Test on Reader Tour	000-00-000	25	Admin	

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete a Reader Tour set.

### **Building a Reader Tour**

Because of the design of the module, Reader Tours are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a **New** record, the **Add a record** window will appear:

Figure 217: Field Names



### **Field Names**

The Reader Tour Module contains the following field names:

- **1). Reader Tour Number:** The number assigned to this Reader Tour Record. This is the number used (along with the Description) to identify the Tour in Status when it is active.
- 2). Start Reader: This Reader Circuit activates the Reader Tour. Clicking on the Start Reader button will display a choice of Readers programmed in the system.
- **3).** Tour Timer: The Tour Timer is the time the Reader Tour can remain active. Should the timer expire a Reader Tour Failure is sent to the Alarm Display.
- **4). Description:** Text files that are used to describe the Reader Tour. This verbiage is used (along with the Tour Number) to identify the Reader Tour in Status when it is active. 65 alphanumeric characters maximum.
- 5). System Readers: These are the Reader Circuits available for selection as Tour Readers. The readers can be selected by clicking on them with the mouse. Clicking on the Add button will move the highlighted System Readers into the Selected Readers window.
- 6). Selected Readers: These are the Reader Circuits that are selected as Tour Readers for this Reader Tour Record. The readers can be selected by clicking on them with the mouse. You can remove them from this window by clicking on the **Remove** button.

### Figure 218: Sample Reader Tour

Tour Number 1 Start F	Reader 000-00-000	Tour Timer 25	Last Changed By	dmin
Description 11th Floor Rea	der Tour for Administration Offices	1		
	System Reader 000-00-000		Selected Readers 000-00-000	
	New Edit	Delete	Save Cancel	

### **General Operation**

A Reader Tour is activated by a valid Card Read at the **Start Reader** and a message that the Reader Tour has been started is sent to the Alarm Display. As the Tour is progressing, each transaction is written to history. The Tour is completed when a card is presented to all of the readers in the Tour. A message that the Reader Tour has been completed is sent to the Alarm Display.

# **Copying Records**

- You can copy from one Reader Tour to the next by doing any of the following:
  - Ø Highlight the Reader Tour you want to copy from and Select **Open**, and the **Change a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Highlight the Reader Tour you want to copy from and Select New and the Add a record window will appear. OR
  - Ø Right click on the Reader Tour you want to copy from and select **Add** from the pop down menu and the **Add a record** window will appear.
- Make sure to change the **Reader Tour Number**, as well as the data entries, and press the **OK** button.
- The edited Reader Tour will be listed in the **RISG Reader Tour [rtour1] window** as a new record.

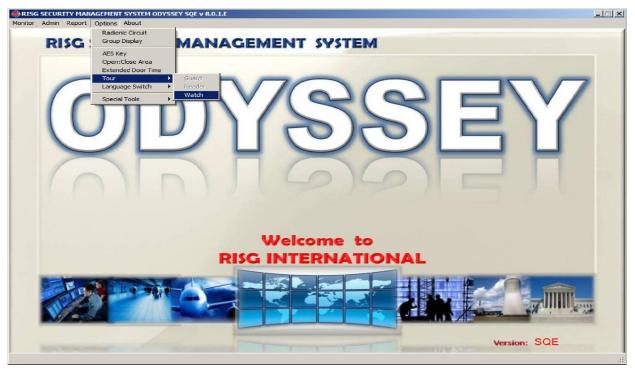
# Watch Tour

This is the standard version of tour software. There are 1023 tours available with up to 50 stations in each tour and any number may be active at a given time. The only restriction is that the same station may not be in more than one active tour. The tour may be started by a card reader or by user command. The tour stations have a sequence that must be followed as well as a time period to reach each station. An alarm is generated if the sequence is not adhered to or if the station is reached too early or late. The tour may be given a modifier for each station. This means that if the time to go from station 2 to station 3 is 5 minutes and the modifier is 2 then the actual time to reach the station is 3 to 7 minutes. Input points as well as readers may be in a tour. The tour may be stopped at any time as well as being able to be restarted at any sequence. Status shows all the tours that are active as well as any failed tours. History allows the user to get hard copy reports of both successful and unsuccessful tour activity

# **Data Entry**

First you must launch the **Watch Tour** file. To do this click on **Options** at the top of the **RISG Security Management Window** as shown below:

Figure 219: RISG Security Management System Tour - Watch Tour



• After selecting the Watch Tour module, the List (Watch Tour) records window will appear:

### Figure 220: List records

our Number	Description			Tour Reader	Tour Output	Modifier	Last Changed By
	Test on Watch Tour			000-00-000	000-00-001	5	Admin
Number	Modifier 0	📕 Print Watch Tou	ur Start Re	ader		Tour Output	
intion					Las	Changed Bu	Admin
cription		Sustem Input		Selector		Changed By	Admin
cription 🗾		System Input	Station	Selected		Changed By	Admin
cription						Changed By	Admin

• The List (Watch Tour) records window will be active only at this time. Enter a Watch Tour Number if you wish to view a single Watch Tour Record.

#### Figure 221: RISG Watch Tour

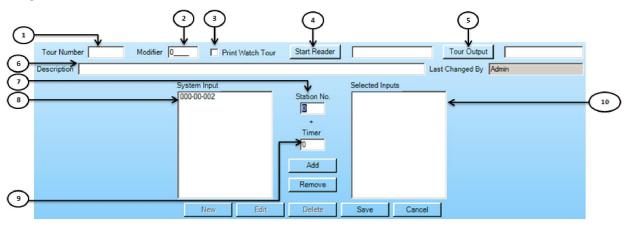
Tour Number	Description	Tour Reader	Tour Output	Modifier	Last Changed By
1	Test on Watch Tour	000-00-000	000-00-001	5	Admin

• At this point, you can Add, Edit, View, or Delete an Watch Tour set.

### **Building a Watch Tour**

Because of the design of the module, Watch Tours are programmed in a group. You can use any of the **Open** functions listed in the **Standard Conventions** section. Once you request to enter a **New** record, the **Add a record** window will appear:

Figure 222: Field Names



### **Field Names**

The Watch Tour Module contains the following field names:

- **1). Tour Number:** The number assigned to this Watch Tour Record. Used (along with the Description) to identify the Tour in Status when it is active.
- **2). Modifier:** This field allows you to select a time modifier (in minutes) for the Watch Tour station intervals.
- **3). Print Watch Tour:** Selects each Watch Tour transaction to print to an assigned Audit Trail Printer.
- **4). Start Reader:** This Reader Circuit activates the Watch Tour. Activation can also be accomplished with a manual command from a Workstation. Clicking on the **Start Reader** button will display a choice of Readers programmed in the system.
- 5). Tour Output: The Tour Output turns on when a Watch Tour is active and turns off when tour is inactive. Clicking on the **Tour Output** button will display a list of Outputs programmed in the system.
- 6). Description: This is a text file that is used to describe the Watch Tour. This verbiage is used (along with the Tour Number) to identify the Watch Tour in Status, when it is active. 70 alphanumeric characters maximum.
- **7). Station No.:** This is the sequence number for the selected Watch Tour station. When you highlight an input for selection, you select the sequence in the Watch Tour for this circuit.
- 8). System Inputs: These are the Input Circuits available for selection as Watch Tour stations.
- 9). Timer: When you highlight an input for selection, you select the time interval (in minutes)
  - for this circuit. Should the timer expire a Watch Tour Failure is sent to the Alarm Display.

**10). Selected Inputs:** These are the Reader Circuits that are selected as Tour Readers for this Watch Tour Record.

Tour Number 2 Modifier 5	Print Watch Tour	Start Reader	000-00-000	Tour Output 000-00-001
Description			Las	t Changed By Admin
	System Input 000-00-002	Station No. 0 + Timer 0 Add Remove	Selected Inputs 0:000-00-002:0	
	New Edit	Delete	Save Cancel	

#### Figure 223: Sample Watch Tour

### **General Operation**

When a Watch Tour is activated by the **Start Reader** or a manual command, a message that the Watch Tour has been started is sent to the Alarm Display. As the Tour is progressing, each transaction is displayed and written to history. The Tour is completed when a card is presented to the last Watch Tour station. A message that the Watch Tour has been completed is sent to the Alarm Display. If the Watch Tour is not completed, the stations are accessed out of sequence, or a time interval between stations is exceeded (or the station is accessed too early), an alarm will be displayed specifying the violation.

### **Copying Records**

- You can copy from one Watch Tour to the next by doing any of the following:
  - Ø Highlight the Watch Tour you want to copy from and Select **Open**, and the **Change a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Highlight the Watch Tour you want to copy from and Select **New** and the **Add a record** window will appear. **OR**
  - Ø Right click on the Watch Tour you want to copy from and select **Add** from the pop down menu and the **Add a record** window will appear.
- Make sure to change the **Watch Tour Number**, as well as the data entries, and press the **OK** button.
- The edited Watch Tour will be listed in the **RISG Watch Tour [wtour1] window** as a new record.

## Visitor

The Visitor module is an optional feature that allows an operator to control Visitor access cards and Temporary cards without the need to constantly access the Master Personnel file.

### **Data Entry**

*Note: The Visitor module is a special application module; the procedures used as described in the* **Standard Conventions** section do not apply

First you must launch the **Visitor** file. To do this click on **Admin** at the top of the **RISG Security Management Window** and select **Visitor** from the drop down menu.

• After selecting the **Visitor** module, the **Sub Menu – Visitor/Temporary Card** will display:

Add Vistor Temo Card System Add Vistor Temo Card System Check Out Vistor Card Check Out Vistor Card Check Out Temporary Card Check in Vistor Card Check in Temp Card System Add Cards Cards Check Out Cards Check Out	RISG : Visitor / Temporary Card : 1.0.0.1		_I_I ×I
Al Cards Al	2 2	Check Dut Tamporary Card Check Dut On Hold Card Check In Visitor Card Check in Tamp Card Ext	
Detail       Badge Card Number       Card Number         Personal       Employee ID       Here To See         Last Name       First Name       Company         Middle Name       Company       Escort         Escort       Escort Grad Number       First Name         Escort       Escort Grad Number       Escort Grad Number         Escort       Escort Grad Number       First Name         Escort       Escort Grad Number       Escort Grad Number	All Cards Cards On kind Cards Check In Cards Check Out	Badge Card Number       Card Number         Personal       Employee ID         Employee ID       Personal         Middle Name       Pirot Name         Middle Name       Company         Escort       Escort         Escort       Last Name         First Name       Pirot Name         I Hold       Annunciale         Escort       Escort Regulined         Group Case       Expire On	

The sub menu is divided into 2 sections: Visitor and Temporary Card.

## **Visitor Card**

The Visitor module allows the operator to provide a pre-programmed access card to a visitor without building a Master Personnel record. The Visitor module allows the operator to attach a name and expiration date to a card temporarily. This is called Checking a Card Out.

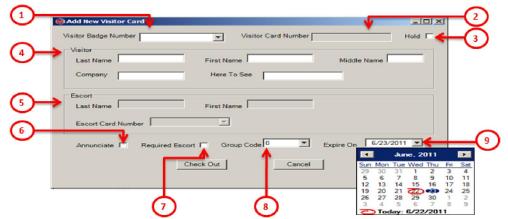
When the visitor returns the card, the card is then Checked In and made available for another visitor assignment. Card Status can be used to verify the status of the card, and also to extend the expiration date, if necessary.

Please note that Visitor cards are pre-programmed in the system before they can be checked out.

### **Check Card Out**

Visitor Cards are preprogrammed in the database as Visitor Cards. They can have programmed Group Codes, or you can add one when you check out the card. You would enter a Visitors Name, whom they are to see, what company they represent, and if they have an escort. You can then add an Expiration date by pulling down the calendar. During the time the card is active, all history transactions for the visitor card will record under the visitors name until the card is checked in.

#### Figure 225: Field Names



### **Field Names**

**1). Visitor Badge Number:** Badge number for Visitor card. This information is entered into the Badge No. field in the Master Personnel file for all cards to be used as Visitor cards.

- **2). Visitor Card Number:** This is the actual card number for this Visitor Badge. When the Badge Number is entered the Card Number is retrieved from the Master Personnel file. *Note: A visitor card must have an ID Status of 99 (unassigned) to be assigned as a valid visitor card.*
- **3).** Hold: A check in this box will hold the Visitor card in reserve for the assigned visitor. The card will not be activated until the Hold is removed.
- **4). Visitor:** This is where the visitor personal information is entered when creating the Visitor card.
- **5). Escort:** If an escort is required for this visitor, the name and card information for the escort is entered here. *Note: An escort card must have an ID Status of 0 (current) or 1 (temporary) to be a valid escort card.*
- **6). Annunciate Card:** If this box is check, any transaction from the visitor card will be displayed as an ID Annunciated alarm on the Alarm Display.
- **7).** Requires Escort Card: If this box is checked, and escort card is required for the visitor card to be granted access to any card reader.
- **8). Group Code:** The Group code number entered here assigns the access rights for this visitor card. (See Group Code section of the Administrators Manual).
- 9). Expire Card on: Expiration date for the Visitor Card.

### Hold

You can enter data for a visitor ahead of their arrival and place the card on hold. Hold will keep the card available for check out, but not activate the card until the hold is removed using the **Cards on Hold** function.

#### Figure 226: Visitor Card on Hold

🛞 Add New Visitor Card				_						
Visitor Badge Number	•	/isitor Card Numb	er	Hold						
Visitor										
Last Name	First Name		Middle	e Name						
Company	Here To S	ice								
Escort			_							
Last Name	First Name									
Escort Card Number	Y									
Annunciate 🗖 Required Esc	ort 🔽 Group	Code 0	Expire On	6/24/2011 💌						
	Check Out	Cano	el							
					li					
🖃 🥷 Risg Visitor-Temp Card System	Card Number	Badge Number	Group Code	Employee ID	Fisrt Name	Last Name	Middle Name	Company	Expire Date	Card Ty
- 🦉 All Cards	125487	1255498	0	12345		Visitor-Temp				Visitor
Cards On Hold										
Cards Check Out										
	•									E F
I										

To remove the hold on a card, simply click on the Hold checkbox for the desired card in the **Cards on Hold** list.

### **Check Card In**

Checking the card in will de-activate the card, and remove the name and access criteria from the card record. The ID Status of the card will be changed to 99 (unassigned).

<u>(</u> )-	CheckIn Visitor Card	_
<b>3</b> -	Visitor Badge Number Visitor Card Number	-2
9-	Last Name First Name Middle Name	
	Company Here To See	
	Check In Cancel	

### **Field Names**

- 1). Visitor Badge Number: Badge number for Visitor card. This information is entered into the Badge No. field in the Master Personnel file for all cards to be used as Visitor cards.
- 2). Visitor Card Number: This is the actual card number for this Visitor Badge. When the Badge Number is entered the Card Number is retrieved from the Master Personnel file. When you enter the badge number, the card number will automatically be displayed when you tab out of the Badge Number field. Note: A visitor card must have an ID Status of 99 (unassigned) to be assigned as a valid visitor card.
- 3). Visitor: When you enter the badge number, visitor personal information will automatically be displayed when you tab out of the Badge Number field.

### **Card Status**

The status of all active cards (including visitor cards on hold) in both the Visitor module and the Temporary Card module can be viewed by clicking on the Card Status button in the Visitor/Temporary Card main screen. You can also check in a Visitor or Temporary card by double clicking the desired card record in the list. Additionally, you can extend the expiration date for a Visitor or Temporary card by highlighting the card record and clicking on the Expiration Date button and selecting the new date from the calendar. This operation must be performed prior to the original expiration date.

#### Figure 228: Card Status

Employee ID	Fisrt Name	Last Name	Middle Name	Company	Expire Date	Card Type	Card Status	On Hold	Here To See
12345		Visitor-Temp			6/23/2011	Visitor	1		
12354	Jason	Oliva		Receptors Inc.	6/24/2011	Temporary	1		123
24578		Visitor-Temp				Checkin	99		
243234234		Visitor-Temp			6/24/2011	Visitor	1		
					1				
4									E E

## **Temporary Card**

The Temporary Card module is for existing cards that need to be temporarily replaced. The Temporary Card will de-activate the original card and transfer the access criteria from the original card to Temporary card.

Please note that Temporary cards are pre-programmed in the system before they can be checked out. Check Out

When checking out a Temporary Card, the module will ask for the card number of the card you wish to replace. You can call up the existing card record by Card Number, Employee ID or Social Security Number (SSN) (SSN can be used only if this data has been entered in the card record).

(	New Temporary Card Enter 1 of the following	
	Employee Card Number	
	C Employee ID	<u> </u>
	C Employee SSN	<u> </u>
	ок	Cancel

Once the existing card is retrieved, you will need to enter the pre-programmed Temporary card information.

Figure 230: Temporary Card Check Out Field Names

	🐞 Check Out Ten	op Card				1	- [0]	×				
$\sim$	Employee											
5	Employee ID	12354										
_	Last Name	Oliva										
	First Name	Jason										
	Middle Name											
	Replace								Ι.	$\frown$		
	Current Card N	urriber i	1236					*		(2)	$\frown$	
	With Temporary	Card Number	9769-	473			Ψ.	*		$\leq$	(3)	
	Expire On	I	6/2	1/201	1		-	K-			$\preceq$	
			•	l	Jun	e, 2	011					ン
	CI	eck Out	Sun 29 5	Mon 30 6	31 7	1 8	Thu 2 9	Fri 3 10	Sat 4 1	~		
- 1			12 19	13 20	14	15	16	17	18			
н	old 🗖 Annunci	ate 🗖 Es	26	27	28	29	30	1	2			
_			2	Tod	lay: I	6/23	/201	1	~			

### **Field Names**

- 1). Employee: Information retrieved from the Master Personnel file for the card you are replacing.
- 2). Current Card number: The card number for which you are creating a Temporary card.
- **3).** Temporary Card Number: The card number of the Temporary card. *Note: A Temporary card must have a status of 0 (current) or 1 (temporary) to be assigned as a valid Temporary card.*
- 4). Expires on: Expiration date of the Temporary card.

### **Checking In**

The temporary card will expire on the selected date, but the original card will not be re-activated until the Temporary card is checked back in. To check in a Temporary card, click on the Check Card In button on the main Visitor/Temporary Card menu. The Check In window will display.

Choose Temporary Card	
Employee Card Number	
C Employee ID	
C Employee SSN	
ОК	Cancel

- You can retrieve the Temporary card record by entering the Temporary Card Number, the Employee ID or the Social Security Number (if the SSN in entered in the Master Personnel File).
- The Temporary Card Check In window will display.

Figure 232: Temporary Card Check In

	Heck In Temporary Card
$\frown$	Employee
9	Employee ID 12354
	Last Name Oliva
	First Name Jason
	Middle Name
$\frown$	Card
Ċ	Temporary Card Number 9769473
	Current Card Number 123698
	Expire On 6/24/2011
	Check In Cancel

### **Field Names**

- 1). Employee: Information retrieved from the Master Personnel file for the card you are replacing.
- **2). Replace:** Information retrieved from the Master Personnel File showing the Temporary Card you are checking in and the original card you are re-activating.

## **Badge Layout Tool**

The Badge Layout Tool allows a user to build formatted layouts that are used in the Badge production portion of the software. This tool uses standard graphic files such as JPG's, and BMP's generated by other programs to create the background framework for an ID Badge. The Badge Layout tool enables a user to build Badge layouts that include:

- § Base Badge format imports using JPG, TIF, or BMP format allowing you to build any design required for the Base section of the Badge.
- § Text Generator to place Text type field that are printed on every badge

- § Placement of all Fields available from the Master Personnel Screen.
- § Ability to change graphics on the badge based on data in the database.
- § Adjustable Video sizing and placement of the Cardholders image.
- § Ability to Copy one layout to another.
- § Ability to attach two layouts together for Double-sided printing.

Once the Layout is completed, Badge production becomes seamless through the Master Personnel Screens. After capturing the Cardholder's image, you can print the badge from the same screens. All layouts created will show up as choices in the Badging Section.

### Planning

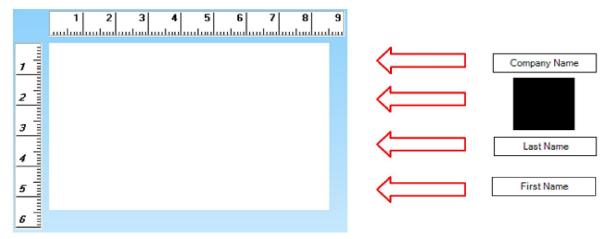
Planning your badge layouts beforehand can save you time, trouble and minimize the number of layouts to choose from when producing badges. For example will the badges be basically the same except for the background color? If so then you can use the logo feature to automatically select the correct background color based on a specific field you enter in a Cardholders record. This limits your layout to one layout and uses the string in a field to determine the background color.

Deciding beforehand what you're going to place on a Badge is essential prior to beginning the layout Objects are placed on the Layout in layers, and every time the layout is printed, the order is repeated. Consequently, you do not want to lay objects down in the wrong order or place a large object over one or several smaller objects.

Note: A badge layout must contain a base Image and a Video box as a minimum. Layouts not containing these elements will not save to the database.

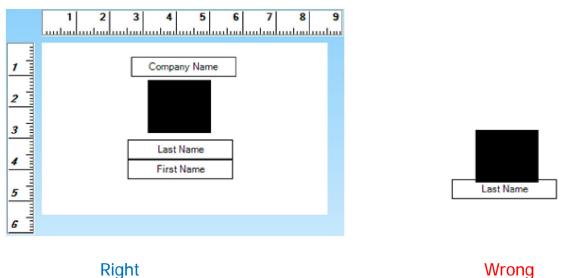
Below is a graphical representation of how a badge is created using layered objects:

#### Figure 233: Badge Layout



Each additional object is layered on top of the last object

#### Figure 234: Badge Layout



1). There are many third party graphics programs available that can help create intricate image and logo files. These programs, mated with Receptors layout tool allow you to produce artistic as well as functional badges. For less artistic or simple designs, most machines are equipped with Microsoft Paint to help you create image file.

### **Opening the Badge Layout Tool**

First you must launch the **Badge Layout** module. To do this click on **Admin** at the top of the **RISG Security Management Window** and select **Administration** from the drop down menu.

• After selecting the **Badging** module, the Badge Setup window will appear:

Figure 235: Badge Setup

Card Holder Badge Details Employee	Comment	
Horizontal Vertical Fonts Text Barco		
Badge Card	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 	Object Name
Badge Number Badge ID Badge Name Back Card	1	X Y Width Height
Style	2	Font Name Microsoft Sans Serif
Front Side     Back Side     Select a corresponding back layout	3	Color ControlText Style Regular
	5	Size 8
Save Save As Cancel	6	Plain Text

From the menu bar across the top of the Badge Layout window, you may choose from several pull down menus:

• **Card Holder:** Provides the card holder information (First Name, Middle Name, Last Name, Suffix Name, Ethnic, SSN, Printed Badge Name, Work Phone and Home Phone).

- **Badge Details:** Provides the following details Badge Code, Badge Name, Badge Number, Card Number, Embossed Number, Effective Date, Expiration Date and Issue Date.
- **Employee:** Provides the Employee Information of the Card Holder (Employee ID, Company Name. Company Number, Department Name, Department Number, Department Location, Job Title, Division and Shift).
- **Comment:** This menu is the comment for the card holder. 10 comments can be inserted to the Badge Card.
- Sub menu bar:
  - Ø Horizontal and Vertical- The Layout of the Badge Card
  - Ø Fonts
  - Ø Text
  - Ø Barcode
  - Ø BG (Background)
  - Ø Logo
  - Ø Image
  - Ø Signature
  - Ø Delete

### **Creating a new Badge Layout**

To create a new layout, click on **File** and select **New** from the pull down menu. The **Select Badge Background Image** window will display:

#### Figure 236: Select Badge Background Image

Card Holder Badge Details Employee	- Comment	
Horizontal Vertical Fonts Text Barc		
Badge Card V New Edit Delete		Object Name imgPhoto
Badge Number Badge ID Badge Name Back Card		X Y Width Height 119 12 72 64
Style • Front Side O Back Side	3	Font Name Microsoft Sans Serif Color ControlText
Select a corresponding back layout	<u>4</u> 5	Style Regular Size 8
Save Save As Cancel Preview Print	5 6	Plain Text

Hit on **Image Icon** on the sub menu:



d Holder Employe	e Information Personal Emergency Inform			
		ation   Auto   Comment   Time Attendance		
				>
Employee Id	10200			1 An
First Name Pete	Middle Name	Last Name Rose	Suffix Name	
rete		Pucas		Mat /
BadgeType	Printed Badge Name	Partition Levels		
		0 0 0 0		
Card Informati Card No. Issue Code Badge No. Badge Code KeyPad No Emboss Number	9785454		Single Card Enrolment Reader Not Used	Picture
Cards Issued	*	Barcode	Last Used Information Used Reader 019-00-000	Remove Crop Browse Grab
9787171	9785454	Use Barcode Number Like Employee Add Card Delete Card Finger P		Last Change By win7

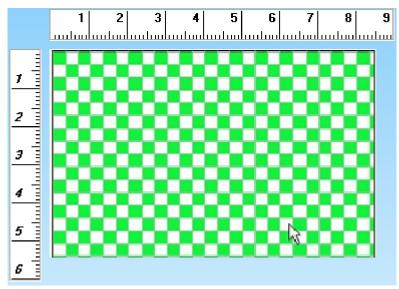
The Image File works in the Master Personnel in the Card Information picture.

elect a image	File to insert into Badge Layout's B		2
Look in:	My Received Files	💽 🕝 🎓 📂 🖽 -	
	Name 🔺	Size Type	Date
	6614	23 KB Graphics Interchan	12/12
My Recent	6614(1)	23 KB Graphics Interchan	12/22
Documents	8037	40 KB Graphics Interchan	12/22
100	a 244377_2291302	49 KB JPEG Image	11/30
	289380_5645110[1]	44 KB Graphics Interchan	12/22
Desktop	a 2006612X	20 KB Graphics Interchan	12/07
	bestguess	70 KB Windows Bitmap Im	12/13
	allydoghouse_com_0026_4	19 KB JPEG Image	11/30
	kapook_28136	175 KB Graphics Interchan	12/22
My Documents	me	4 KB JPEG Image	12/19
.,	e_02_1_557	14 KB JPEG Image	11/30
	pug-1	43 KB JPEG Image	11/30
	egpuggg	24 KB JPEG Image	11/30
My Computer	Tat	83 KB JPEG Image	12/20
			>

Figure 238: Select Badge Background Image

Click **Open** to use the selected Image or **cancel** to quit.

If you select **Open** the Image file will be pasted into the Badge Setup window oriented to the upper left corner of the grid:

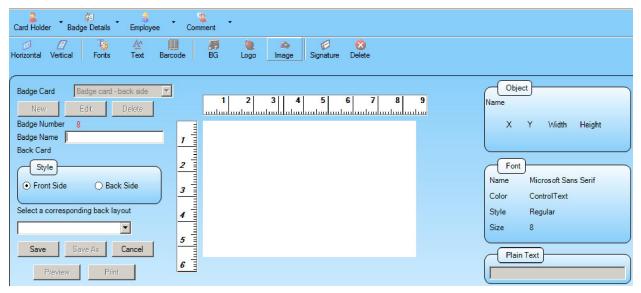


Using the mouse, you can reposition the image on the grid.

Note: If you wish to use a white background on the layout, the background image can be made very small and can be located outside the grid area so that it will not print on the badge. This satisfies the background image requirement without actually having the image on the layout.

Once the background image is in place, you can start adding objects to the layout. To add an object, click on **Object** pull down menu and select **Insert**. The **Define Object to Insert** window will display:

Figure 240: Define Object to Insert



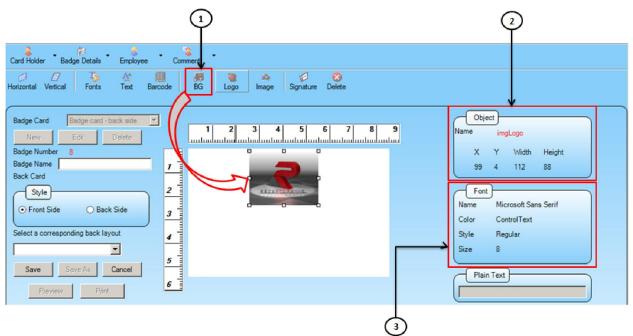
### **Background Image**

The next object to insert will be **Background Logo**.

Note: All Badge Layouts are required to include a Video object including back of Badge Layouts. Like the base image, if you do not wish to print the Video object on a card, you can make the Video Object very small and place it outside of the grid. This satisfies the Video object requirement without actually having the video on the layout.

Click on the Logo radio button on the Define Object to Insert window. The Logo window will display:

#### Figure 241: Define Object to Insert - Image



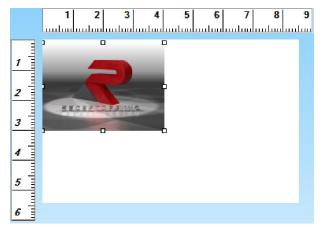
BG (Background) Button: This radio button selects the Video Object insertion window.

2). Object: The Width and the Length of the Logo.

**3).** Font: the Properties of the text including the Name, Color, Style and Size. *Note: Do not exceed a value of 1.3" in either height or width of a Logo Object.* 

• After selecting the desired parameters for your Logo Object, click OK.

#### Figure 242: Badge Layout – Image Replacement



### Field

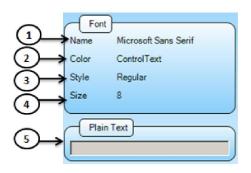
The next objects to place on the layout are Fields. These are fields from the database such as Company, First Name, Last Name, Employee ID, etc. The available fields are defined in the file **pers.dfn** in the Receptors folder. This file shows the available database fields from the tables pers and pinf that make up the Master Personnel record. It identifies the field names and their respective character lengths. To add an object, click on **Object** pull down menu and select **Insert**. The **Define Object to Insert** window will display:

Figure 243: Define Object to Insert

Card Holder Badge Details Employee Com		
Horizontal Vertical Fonts Text Barcode	房 🦉 🏤 🧭 🗐 BG Logo Image Signature Delete	
Badge Card Badge card - back side Y New Edit Delete	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Object
Badge Number 8 Badge Name 1 Back Card		X Y Width Height
Back Card Style Front Side Select a corresponding back layout Save Save Sove		Font Name Microsoft Sans Serif
Select a corresponding back layout		Color ControlText Style Regular
Save Baye As Cancel 5		Size 8
Preview Print		

• Click on the Field radio button on the Define Object to Insert window. The Field window will display:

Figure 244: Define Object to Insert Field Object



- 1). Name: Font Name used.
- 2). Color: The default font color is black.
- 3). Style: These items allow you to modify the font characters to better fit your badge design.
- 4). Size: Font size.
- 5). Plain Text: This field is used to configure fonts.
  - Select the font by clicking on the Browse button in Item #2:

#### Figure 245: Font Selection

ont:	Font style:	Size:
Arial	Narrow	8 OK
Arial Arial Arial Rounded MT - Baskerville Old Face Bauhau/ 93 Bell MT	Narrow Italic Narrow Italic Italic Regular Narrow Bold	▲ 8 ▲ Cancel 9 10 Cancel 11 12 14 ↓ 16 ▼
Effects Strikeout Underline Color: Black	Script: Western	Zz

• Highlight the font and select the size and style. Click **OK**. The **Define Object to Insert** window will display with the selected parameters:

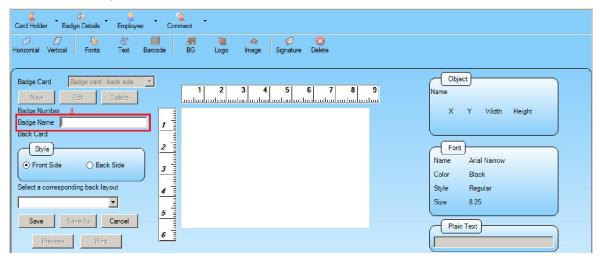
#### Figure 246: Define Object to Insert

Font	.)(	
Name	Arial Narrow	
Color	Black	
Style	Regular	
Size	8.25	
$\square$		
Plair	n Text	

You can change the font size, color, style, alter the position or rotate the text as needed from the **Define Object to Insert** window by using the radio buttons and check boxes.

Select the Field name by clicking on the Field pull down menu and highlighting the desired field name:

Figure 247: Define Object to Insert



• After selecting the desired parameters for your Field Object, click **OK**. The Field Object will be placed on the layout grid. Use the mouse to move it to the desired location on the layout:

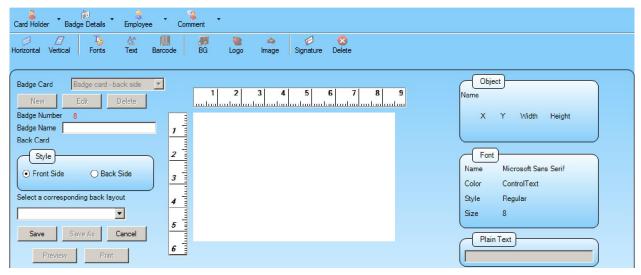
Figure 248: Badge Setup – Untitle
-----------------------------------

(			
Badge Card			v
New	Edit	Delete	
Badge Number	8		
Badge Name	Badge Name	No.1	
Back Card			
Style • Front Side Select a corres		Back Side	
	sponding back	Tayout	
Save	Save As	Cancel	
Previe	ew F	Print	

## Text

The Text Object provides the means to place fixed text on the badge that is common to all badges create from this layout. To add a Text Object, click on **Object** pull down menu and select **Insert**. The **Define Object to Insert** window will display:

#### Figure 249: Define Object to Insert



• Click on the **Text** radio button on the **Define Object to Insert** window. The **Text** window will display:

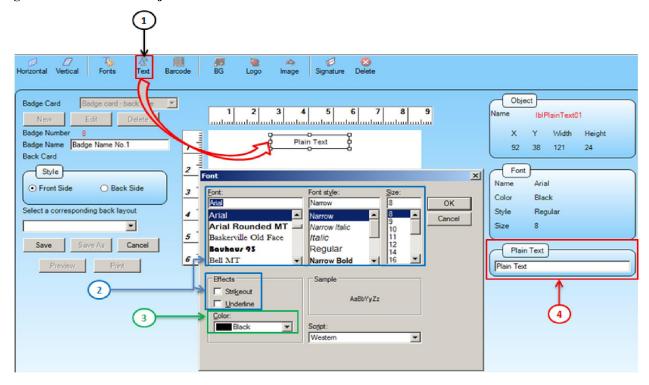
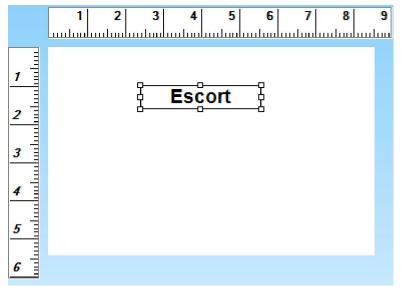


Figure 250: Define Text Object to Insert Field Names

- 1). Text Button: This radio button selects the Text Object insertion window.
- 2). Font Selection/Style/Sizing: This button allows you to select the font for the Text Object as well as the color of the font. These items allow you to modify the font characters to better fit your badge design.
- 3). Font Sizing and Style: The default font color is black
- 4). Plain Text: This box is provided for typing your Text Object.

• After selecting the desired parameters for your Text Object, click **OK**. The Text Object will be placed on the layout grid. Use the mouse to move it to the desired location on the layout:

Figure 251: Badge Setup - Untitled



• Using the above method, you can add additional Text objects to the layout and position them as required.

### Logo

The Logo Object allows you to associate character strings in the database to place a logo on the badge layout. For example, you could enter a company "Receptors Inc." in the Company database and select Company1 (co\_name1) as the logo field. When you add a path to a logo in the Format box identifying "Receptors Inc." as the company, the Receptors Inc. logo will be placed on the badge. This feature can save on the number of layouts to choose from.

To add a Logo Object, click on **Object** pull down menu and select **Insert**. The **Define Object to Insert** window will display:

Card Holder Badge Details Employee Comment	
1日 日本	
	Object
Badge Card     Badge card - back side       New     Edit       Delete	Name
Badge Number 8	X Y Width Height
Back Card	
Style     2       ⊙ Front Side     ○ Back Side	Name Microsoft Sans Serif
Select a corresponding back layout	Color ControlText Style Regular
	Size 8
Save Save As Cancel	Plain Text
Preview Print 6	

### Figure 252: Logo - Define Object to Insert

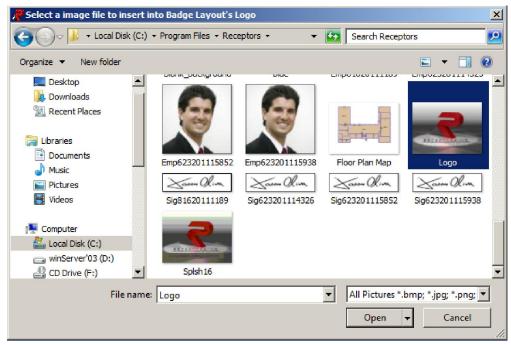
 Click on the Logo button on the Define Object to Insert window. The Text window will display:

#### Figure 253: Logo - Define Object to Insert Field Names

Card Holder Badge	Detais Employee Comment	
Horizontal Vertical	Fonts Text Bar Logo Image Signature Delete	
New Edit Badge Number 8	ye card - back side         1         2         4         5         6         7         8         9           Image: Side         Image: Side	Object Name imgLogo X Y Width Height 0 4 155 112
Select a corresponding	Select a image file to insert into Badge Layout's Logo	Style Bold
Save Save,	Crganize • New folder • Cost Office • Receptors • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
Preview	■ Desktop       ■	Plain Text
	▲ Local Disk (C:)	
	File name: Logo All Pictures *.bmp; *.jpg: *.png; * Open * Cancel	

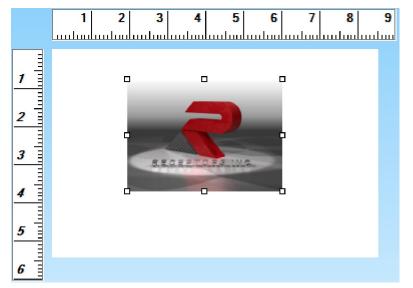
- 1). Logo Button: This button selects the Logo Object insertion window.
- 2). Selection: This menu will automatically pop up when the Logo button is clicked. Select your file using this window.
- **3).** Logo Width and Height: These boxes are provided for sizing of the Logo object. Dimensions are in inches. Default Logo Object size is .80"W X .80"H.

Figure 254: Define Object to Insert



- In this example, the database field selected is Company1 (co\_name1). If the value "Receptors Inc." is selected in the Comppany1 field of the Master Personnel file, the path c:\Program Files\Receptors\logos\Receptors.bmp will be accessed to display and print the Logo for Receptors Inc.
- After selecting the desired parameters for your Logo Object, click **OK**. The Logo Object will be placed on the layout grid. Use the mouse to move it to the desired location on the layout:

Figure 255: Badge Setup – Logo Placement



• Using the above method, you can add additional Logo objects to the layout and position them as required.

### Barcode

Using a field from the Master Personnel Record, you can place a Barcode Object on your layout using industry standard Barcode formats. Special considerations must be taken however, such as the format required for your application, and ribbons required for your printer. Receptors uses an embedded Code39 font for this feature. For other barcode formats please consult you Receptors Regional sales office.

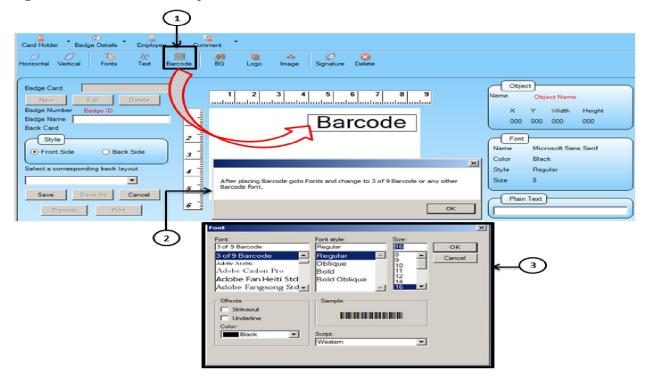
 To add a Barcode Object, click on Object pull down menu and select Insert. The Define Object to Insert window will display:

Card Holder Badge Details Employee Comment A^ 1 -E Horizontal Vertical Fonts Text Barcode BG Logo Signature Delete Image Object Badge card - back side 🛛 💌 Badge Card Name New Badge Number 8 х Y Width Height Badge Name Back Card 2 Style Font Microsoft Sans Serif Name • Front Side O Back Side Color ControlText Select a corresponding back layout Style Regular -Size 8 5 Save As Cancel Plain Text Preview

Figure 256: Define Object to Insert

• Click on the **Barcode** radio button on the **Define Object to Insert** window. The **Barcode** window will display:

#### Figure 257: Bar Code Define Object to Insert Field Names



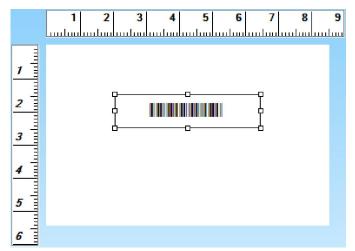
- 1). Barcode Button: This button selects the Barcode Object.
- 2). Instruction: This is a instruction pop up window.
- **3).** Barcode Width and Height: These boxes are provided for sizing of the Barcode object. The Barcode font determines the Barcode width. Dimensions are in inches.

Note: To rotate barcode right click on the bar code and select Rotate.

**Figure 258: Define Object to Insert** 

<b>RISG Administrator version</b>	5.3.0.4 [Server]					_ 0
aster Personnel Badging Hardw	vare Configuration Access Comm	and Map Design User-Passkey Le	evels			
ard Holder Employee Information	Personal Emergency Informati	on Auto Comment				
Employee Id First Name BadgeType	Middle Name	Last Name	Suffix Name			
ard Information   Badge Card		Access Requirements			Picture	
Card No.				vator Access		]
Issue Code	Seq No.	View Find A	Add Threat Card St			
Badge No.	Activation Date 📝 🖉	Giroup Code	0 -Curre			
Badge Code	Effective Date 📝	Special Access Readers		_		
KeyPad No	Issue Date 77	Special Access TimeZone	Ann Rea	unciate der Tour		
Emboss Number	Expiration Date / /	Special Access Level		passback Exempt		
Barcode Barcode Number L	Used Read		Signatu	Remove Browse	Remove Browse	Crop Grab
('					- Last C	hange By
	Add Card	Delete Card Finger Print				N/A
	New Record 0	ancel Record Ed	14	Delete	Search	
	New Record	ancel Record Ed	NT.	Delete	Search	

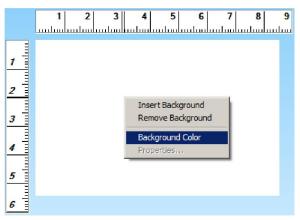
• The barcode works in Master Personnel as a Employee ID:



### **Background Color**

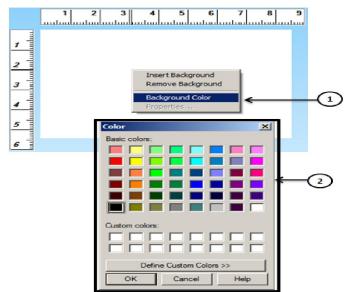
• Insert a Background color to the Badge Layout:

Figure 260: Define Object to Insert



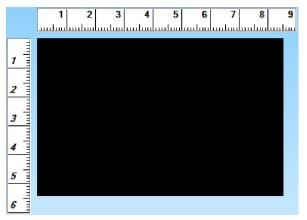
• Click on the **Box** radio button on the **Define Object to Insert** window. The **Box** window will display:

#### Figure 261: Box Define Object to Insert Field Names



- 1). Right click option: Select on Background Color.
- 2). Color Option: Color selection.

Figure 262: Badge Setup – Box Placement



### **Modifying Objects**

Objects can be modified in two ways:

You can double click on the object. This will bring up the modification window for the select object. You can highlight the desired object and choose **Modify** under the **Object** pull down menu. Note: You can modify any object on a layout with the exception of the background image. If you need to modify this object, you must delete the badge layout and start over with a new background image. If the background image is a simple bitmap, you can close the layout, modify that file using Microsoft Paint<sup>©</sup> or other graphics packages and save the file as the original name. The modifications will appear the next time you open the badge layout.

## **Removing Objects**

To remove an object from a badge layout, you can highlight the object and choose **Delete** on the sub menu.

### Saving a Layout

To save a new badge layout, click on **Save** under the **File** pull down menu. A **Save Badge As** menu will display. Layouts are designated as either Front or Back. You can attach a back layout to a front layout for double-sided badge printing.

• For a new badge layout, select **Front Layout** or **Back Layout**. When a layout is selected as a Back Layout, the layout name will be added to the **Select a corresponding Back Layout** pull down menu.

Style     Front Side O Back Side	Style O Front Side  O Back Side
Select a corresponding back layout	Select a corresponding back layout
Save Save As Cancel	Save Save As Cancel
Preview Print	Preview Print

Save New Front Layout Save New Back Layout

If your layout is for double sided cards, select a back layout from the **Select a corresponding** Back Layout pull down menu prior to clicking the Save button in the Save Badge As window. Cancel aborts the request to save.

Badge Card No.1
New Edit Delete
Badge Number 14
Badge Name Badge Card No.1
Back Card
Style Front Side    Back Side
Select a corresponding back layout
Badge card - back side       Save     Save As       Cancel   Preview Print

#### Figure 265: Save Badge

### **Opening a Layout**

To open a layout, select on the Badge Card the click pull down menu, select on the Badge then hit on Edit button to open the Badge Card

Figure 266: Open Badge

Badge Card	Badge Card No.1 💌	Badge Card	Badge Car	rd No.1 💌
New	Badge card - back side Badge Card No.1	New	Edit	Delete
Badge Number	14	Badge Numbe	r 14	
Badge Name	Badge Card No.1	Badge Name	Badge Card N	lo.1
Back Card	Badge card - back side	Back Card	Badge card - I	back side

### **Copying a Layout**

You can open a layout and save it as another name if required. One use for this is if you have several layouts with minor differences. You can create the original layout, then save it as another name. You can then make your editing changes to the copy, and still have the original.

To copy a layout you first have to open the layout. Open the layout by choosing **Open** from the File pull down menu (see Opening a Layout).

REV.-A RELEASED 08/2011 PUBLICATION# 5567 After the layout is displayed choose **Save As** from the **File** pull down menu. Now the steps will be the same as saving a layout (see Saving a Layout).

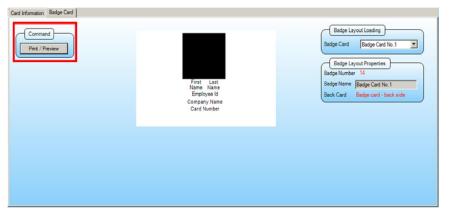
### **Deleting a Layout**

To delete a layout, select on the **Badge Card** the **click** pull down menu, select on the Badge then hit on **Delete** button to delete the Badge Card.

### **Print / Preview**

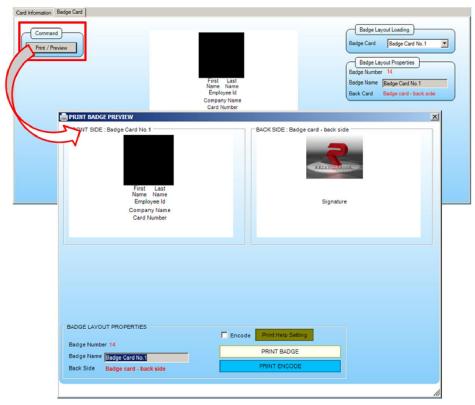
A **Print Badge** section is located at the **Master Personnel** menu on the lower part beside the Card Information.

Figure 267: Badge Setup



After selecting a front badge layout to print or preview, the layout will display:

#### Figure 268: Print Badge



Similarly, after selecting a back badge layout to print or preview, this will also display:

Figure 269: Print Badge

RINT BADGE PREVIEW	×
FRONT SIDE : Badge Card No.1 First Last Name Name Employee Id Company Name Card Number	BACK SIDE : Badge card - back side
BADGE LAYOUT PROPERTIES Badge Number 14 Badge Name Badge Cand Nos Back Side Badge cand - back side	Fint Help Setting PRINT BADGE PRINT ENCODE
	1.

# Utilities

- The following information is provided for your assistance in the procedures described herein
- SQL Backup Procedures
- SQL Maintenance Plans
- Net Use

## **RISG SQL Database Backup**

This applies to SQL Server Management Studio 2005 Express, SQL Server Management Studio 2005. to SQL Server Management Studio 2008 Express and SQL Server Management Studio 2008.

- The following information describes how to use the SQL Server Utility to Backup the RIS database.
- The database can be backed up on-line, without interrupting the system operation. You can also setup the Backup to be performed on a schedule automatically. (Described in the next section).
- The SQL Server backup saves the database Alarm History and Data files (Reader circuits, Input circuits, Output circuits, Group Codes etc.) **ONLY**. This is not a backup of your system files. For a complete backup, see your IT Administrator.

## Tapes

• Backups are essential for the successful recovery of the system in the event of a failure. It's extremely important that you use quality tapes, or those tapes recommended by your tape drive manufacturer. **IT IS ALSO IMPORTANT** that you use multiple tapes. Don't continue to backup over the same tape over and over. You can certainly use tapes over again; it's just a good practice to have for example, a weekly or monthly set of backup tapes. This routine builds in redundancy to your backup tapes as well. You're not relying on a single tape to restore your system.

## **Backing up the RIS Database**

- The backup procedure explained here is for backing up the RIS database to a Disk Drive. If you desire to backup to a Tape Drive the procedures are basically the same except you will select the Tape option instead of Disk in the SQL Server Backup ris window. Then select the Tape Drive from the list. If there is only one Tape Drive in your system it will be labeled as \\ Tape 0 \\.
- To Open the SQL Server Management Studio from Start go to Programs, then Microsoft SQL Server, then SQL Server Management Studio.

e e	0
Accessories	Games
Administrative Tools	Computer
🌗 Games	comparei
📗 Maintenance	Network
Microsoft Office	
Microsoft SQL Server 2005	Connect To
📃 😓 SQL Server Management Studio Express	
Configuration Tools	Control Panel
🍶 Nero	
Receptors	Devices and Printers
퉬 Sling Media	
퉬 Smart Install Maker	Default Programs
퉬 Startup	Administrative Tools
🎍 Windows Live	Automatic Fools
J WinRAR	Help and Support
4 Back	Run
1 Buck	the second second
Search programs and files	Shut down 🕨

Figure 270: SQL Server Management Studio

Figure 271: SQL Server Management Studio Console

& Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio E	cpress		Server Management Studio I	xpress	
File Edit View Tools Window Community H	eb		File Edit View Tools Window Community H	telp	
🔔 New Query 🗋 📴 🔡 😫 🚽 🗿	) 🖬 🐉 🤔 🗧		🔔 New Query 📑 📑 💕 💕 🛃 🗿	) = <b>) ) 3</b>	
	Summary	<del>-</del> ×		Summary	• X
왕왕= 기존	1 2 2 7 注 🏛		28 28 = 7 A	🖄 🗃 🧳 🍸 蒜 🏢	
Image: Server Solution       Image: Deablases       Image: Deablases <t< td=""><td>SERVER (SQL Server 9.0.5000 - SERVER\Admin) SERVER Site Vane Security Security Security Presication Menagement</td><td>n(6)</td><td>Image: Second Second</td><td>Plane Serveri pavalases Serveri pavalases Serveri pavalases Tre: Joshup Insi Insi Insi Insi Insi Insi Insi Insi</td><td>S Dem(s)</td></t<>	SERVER (SQL Server 9.0.5000 - SERVER\Admin) SERVER Site Vane Security Security Security Presication Menagement	n(6)	Image: Second	Plane Serveri pavalases Serveri pavalases Serveri pavalases Tre: Joshup Insi Insi Insi Insi Insi Insi Insi Insi	S Dem(s)
Ready					

This is the Main tool used to access SQL Server.

- On the tree click on the + at **Microsoft SQL Servers**
- Click on the + at SQL Server Group and the name of your Server Name will appear.

#### Wait until the right arrow inside the circle turns green

- Click on the + at Server Name
- Click on the **Database** Folder in the left window and the right window will display all Databases in the system.

#### Figure 272: SQL Enterprise Manager Console Databases

Kicrosoft SQL Server Management Studio Ex	kpress	
File Edit View Tools Window Community H	elp	
🔝 New Query   🕞   💦   📂 💖 👷 💭 🗊   関	à 🗉 🥵 🦉 🖕	
	Summary	<del>~</del> ×
왕 및 = 7 @	🔁 🛃 🦨 🍸 🏥 🏢	
<ul> <li>□ ISERVER (SQL Server 9.0.5000 - SERVER\Admin)</li> <li>□ Databases</li> <li>□ Security</li> <li>□ Server Objects</li> <li>□ Replication</li> <li>□ Management</li> </ul>	Databases SERVER\Databases	5 Item(s)
	Name	
	ins is system Databases is nis is backup	
Ready		

• Click on the ris database in the right window once to highlight it.

#### Figure 273: SQL Server Enterprise Manager Backup Database

🍢 Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio E	xpress	
File Edit View Tools Window Community F	telp	5 Item(s)
Ready	Properties	

• Click on **Tools** on the SQL Console menu bar and select **Backup Database** from the menu and the **SQL Server Backup – ris** window will appear.

Back Up Database - ris				
Select a page	🖾 Script 🔻 📑 Help			
Options	Source Database: Recovery model: Backup type: Backup componer	oups: 	ris SIMPLE Full Database Backup	• •
	Description: Backup set will expire	0	days	
Connection	On:	10/12/2011		
Server: WIN7-32 Connection:	Back up to:	Oisk	🔘 Таре	
win7-32\win7	C:\Program Files\Micr	rosoft SQL Server\M	SSQL.1\MSSQL\Backup\	Remove
Progress				Contents
Ready				
	·			OK Cancel

- As you notice that the **Database** box is defaulted to **ris**. Which is the database you will be backing up.
- The Name box is defaulted with the filename that you will be backing up to, which is ris backup.

Receptors recommends that you keep this file name but if you desire you can change it.

- In the Backup section check the bullet for **Database**.
- In the **Destination** section check the bullet for Disk.
- Also in the Destination box the defaulted path is

## C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL.1\Backup\(File Name in the Name box)

- Receptors recommend that you keep this path. If you want to change the path see the section below **Change Backup Path**. When you finish in the **Change Backup Path** return here and continue.
- In the **Overwrite media** section check the bullet for **Overwrite all existing backup sets**.

🔋 Back Up Database - ris	
Select a page	Script  Field Gverwrite media  Overwrite media  Back up to the existing media set  Append to the existing backup set  Overwrite all existing backup sets  Check media set name and backup set expiration  Media set name:  Back up to a new media set, and erase all existing backup sets  New media set name:  New media set description:  Reliability  Verfy backup when finished
Connection	Perform checksum before writing to media
Server: WIN7-32 Connection: win7-32/win7	Continue on error Transaction log Truncate the transaction log
P View connection properties	$\bigcirc$ Back up the tail of the log, and leave the database in the restoring state
Progress	Tape drive
C Ready	Unload the tape after backup Rewind the tape before unloading
	OK Cancel

• When you are ready click the **OK** button and Backup Progress window will appear indicating that the backup process has begun.

Be patient; there may be a couple of seconds before you see the progress bar begin to fill.

Figure 276: Backup Progress

Select a page	🔄 Script 👻 📑 Help
General Options	
	Overwrite media
	Back up to the existing media set
	Append to the existing backup set
	Overwrite all existing backup sets
	Check media set name and backup set expiration
	Media set name:
	Back up to a new media set, and erase all existing backup sets
	New media set name:
	New media set description:
	Reliability
	Venfy backup when finished
Connection	Perform checksum before writing to media
Server:	Continue on error
WIN7-32	Transaction log
Connection: win7-32\win7	Truncate the transaction log
View connection propertie	Back up the tail of the log, and leave the database in the restoring state
Progress	Tape drive
Executing (80%)	Unload the tape after backup
Cooling (00%)	Rewind the tape before unloading
Stop action now	
	OK Cancel

• When backup is complete the **SQL Server Management Studio** window will appear displaying the status of the backup.

Select a page	🛒 Script 👻 📑 Help
General	
Poptions 2	Overwrite media
	Back up to the existing media set
	Append to the existing backup set
	Overwrite all existing backup sets
	Check media set name and backup set expiration
	Media set name:
	Back up to a new media set, and erase all existing backup sets
(	Management Studio Express
Microsoft SQL Server	
	o of database 'ris' completed successfully.
The backup	o of database 'ris' completed successfully.
The backup	o of database 'ns' completed successfully.
Conn	o of database 'ris' completed successfully.
Conn Server: WIN7-32 Connection:	Continue on error Transaction log
Conn Server: WIN7-32 Connection properties	or of database 'ns' completed successfully.     OK     OK     OK     Transaction log     Truncate the transaction log
Conn Server: WIN7-32 Connection: win7-32/win7	Continue on error
Conn Server: WIN7-32 Connection: win7-32/win7 Wew connection properties Progress	Continue on error  Transaction log  Truncate the transaction log  Back up the tail of the log, and leave the database in the restoring state  Tape drive

• Click the OK button and exit SQL Server Management Studio.

## **Change Backup Path**

Figure 278: Backup Path

📙 Back Up Database - ris		_		↔ [_ □ ×
Select a page	🔄 Script 🔻 🚺 Help			
Poptions	Source			
	Database:		ris	-
	Recovery model:		SIMPLE	
	Backup type:		Full	•
	Backup componen	t:		
	Oatabase			
	Files and filegro	ups:		
	Backup set			
	Name:	ris-Ful	Database Backup	
	Description:			
	Backup set will expire:			
	After:	0	🚖 days	
Connection	On:	10/12/2011		
Server: WIN7-32	Destination			
Connection:	Back up to:	Oisk	Tape	
win7-32\win7	C:\Program Files\Micr	osoft SQL Server\N	MSSQL.1\MSSQL\Backup\ris.b	Add
View connection properties				Remove
Progress				Contents
C Ready				
- cellec				]
	·			K Cancel

You must remove the path in the **Destination** box. Click the **Remove** button and the path will be removed.

#### Figure 279: SQL Server Backup - ris

Select a page	🔄 Script 👻 🚺 Help				
P General Options					
	Source				
	Database:		ris		•
	Recovery model:		SIMPLE		
	Backup type:		Full		•
	Backup compo	nent:			
	Oatabase				
	O Files and file	egroups:			
	Backup set				
	Name:	ris-Fu	II Database Bac	skup	
	Description:				
	Backup set will exp	pire:			
	After:	0	10	days	
Connection	On:	10/12/2011			
Server:	Destination				
WIN7-32 Connection:	Back up to:	Oisk		Таре	
win7-32\win7					Add
Wew connection properties					Remove
Progress					Contents
Ready					

• Click the Add button and Select Backup Destination will appear.

Figure 280: SQL Server Select Backup Destination

ackup devices for frequently us	for the backup destination. You can create sed files.
Destinations on disk	
File name:	
\Program Files\Microsoft SG	L Server\MSSQL.1\MSSQL\Backup\
Backup device:	
Backup device:	
Backup device:	*

- Check the bullet for File name.
- In the **File Name** box the path to backup to on the Disk Drive will be defaulted to the **SQL Backup** directory. It's recommended to keep this path but you are not required to.
- Click on the button at the right of the File name box and the Backup Device Location window will appear.

Figure 281: SQL Server Backup Device Location

U Locate Database File:	s - WIN7-32
	s ection nd Settings Files
Selected path:	G:\
Files of type:	Backup Files(*.bak;*.tm)
File name:	ris bak

- At this point you can begin to browse to the Disk drive and directory that you want to save the backup in. Enter a File name at the bottom the window will reflect the path as you browse.
- When you are ready click the **OK** button and you will be returned to the previous window.
- Click the OK button and return back to the procedure you were before the Changing the Backup Path section.

## **Restoring the RIS Database**

In order to restore the RIS Database you must stop Receptors Services 2 and 3. If Receptors Services 2 and 3 are running in the Display Mode then you will need to close the windows. If Receptors Services 2 and 3 are running in the Standard Mode then you will need to close them through Microsoft 2000 Services. Please refer to the Services section of this manual for procedures.

- The restore procedure explained here is for restoring the RIS database from **Disk Drive**. If you desire to restore from a **Tape Drive** the procedures are basically the same except you will select the **Tape** option instead of **Disk** in the **Restore database** window. Then select the Tape Drive from the list. If there is only one Tape Drive in your system it will be labeled as \\ Tape 0 \\.
- Open SQL Server Management Studio as you did the in Backing up the RIS Database section.

Figure 282: SQL Server Enterprise Manager Database Console

👯 Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio E	xDress	
File Edit View Tools Window Community H		
🚉 New Query   🐚   🚵   😅 🔩 🔩 🔛 🥔   🕃		
	Summary	<del>,</del> ×
SERVER (SQL Server 9.0.5000 - SERVER\Admin)     Databases     Databases     Security     Security     Security     Security     Anagement	Databases SERVER\Databases	5 Item(s)
	Name	1
	System Databases	
Ready		

• Click on the **ris** database in the right window once to highlight it.

🍢 Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio Ex	press				
File Edit View Tools Window Community Hel	lp				
🔄 🎦 New Query   🕞   💦 🛛 😂 🖓 🔩 🗔 🗐   🚯	🔳 🌽 🌽	· 😁 🖕			
	Summary				<del>~</del> ×
말 및 = 7 @	🔰 🛃 🦨	7 🖽 🎹			
<ul> <li>■ SERVER (SQL Server 9.0.5000 - SERVER\Admin)</li> <li>■ Databases</li> <li>■ Databases</li> <li>■ Server Objects</li> <li>■ Replication</li> </ul>	间 D	atabases WER\Databases			5 Item(s)
🕀 🧰 Management	Name				
		n Databases			
	TIS TIS TIS TIS	New Database New Query Script Database as Tasks Reports Rename Delete Refresh Properties	Detach Shrink Back Up Restore Generate Scripts	•	Database Transaction Log
Ready					

• Right lick on ris Tasks then on Restore and Database window will appear.

#### Figure 284: Restore Database Default window

Select a page P General	🖾 Script 🔻 🚺 Hel	p						
Poptions	Destination for restor	e	ieting database	for you	r restore on	aration		
	To database:	ris	and decourse	, loi you	i reatore opi			+
	To a point in time	Most	recent possible	,				
	Source for restore							
	Specify the source	e and location of bac	kup sets to res	tore.				
	From database	e: n	s					-
	From device:							
	Select the backu	p sets to restore :						
	Restore Name		Component		Server	Database		1
Connection	🔽 ris-Fu	I Database Backup	Database	Full	WIN7-32	ns	1	
Server: WIN7-32								
Connection: win7-32\win7								
View connection properties								
rogress								
Ready								
	< I I	1						- Þ.

- Under Destination for restore verify To database: ris is selected.
- Under Source for restore Verify the bullet from database ris is selected OR select the bullet From device and chose the path to the backup.
- For **Restore** check the box for **ris- Full Database Backup**.

Figure 285: Page 2 Restore Database

间 Restore Database - ris		
Select a page General	Script 🔻 📑 Help	
Coptions	Restore options	
	Overwrite the existing databa	se
	Preserve the replication settin	-
	Prompt before restoring each	
	Restrict access to the restore Restore the database files as:	d database
	Original File Name	Restore As
	ris_Data	C:\Program Files\Receptors\Database\ris
	ris_Log	C:\Program Files\Receptors\Database\ris
Connection	Recovery state	
Server: WIN7-32	<ul> <li>Leave the database ready to transaction logs cannot be re</li> </ul>	use by rolling back uncommitted transactions. Additional stored.(RESTORE WITH RECOVERY)
Connection: win7-32\win7	Leave the database non-ope transaction logs can be restored.	rational, and do not roll back uncommitted transactions. Additional red.(RESTORE WITH NORECOVERY)
View connection properties	actions in a standby file so that	only mode. Undo uncommitted transactions, but save the undo at recovery effects can be reversed.(RESTORE WITH
Progress	STANDBY)	
Ready	Standby file:	
		OK Cancel

• Click on the **Options** tab at the top of the window under **Restore options** check the box **Overwrite the existing database**, Under **Recovery state** leave the default box check.

• When you are ready click the **OK** button and the **Restore Progress** window will appear indicating that the restore process has begun.

Be patient; there may be a couple of seconds before you see the progress bar begin to fill.

#### Figure 286: Restore Progress

Select a page	🔄 Script 👻 📑 Help	
Ceneral Options		
	Restore options	
	√ Overwrite the existing databas	e
	Preserve the replication setting	gs
	Prompt before restoring each t	backup
	Restrict access to the restored	l database
	Restore the database files as:	
	Original File Name	Restore As
	ris_Data	C:\Program Files\Receptors\Database\ris
	ris Log	C:\Program Files\Receptors\Database\ris
onnection	Recovery state	
Server:		use by rolling back uncommitted transactions. Additional tored (RESTORE WITH RECOVERY)
Connection Server: WIN7-22 Domeellon: wm7-32/Win7	<ul> <li>Leave the database ready to the transaction logs cannot be ready</li> <li>Leave the database non-open</li> </ul>	use by rolling back uncommitted transactions. Additional tored (RESTORE WITH RECOVERY) stional, and do not roll back uncommitted transactions. Additional ed (RESTORE WITH NORECOVERY)
WIN7-32 Connection: win7-32\win7 View connection properti	Leave the database ready to the transaction logs cannot be resident transaction logs cannot be resident transaction logs can be restored transaction logs can be restored by the database in read-on the database in read	ational, and do not roll back uncommitted transactions. Additional
Server: WIN7-32 Connection: win7-32/win7 Wew connection properti Progress	Leave the database ready to the transaction logic cannot be resident transaction logic cannot be resident transaction logic can be restore Leave the database in read-or Leave the database in read-or logic can be re	ational, and do not roll back uncommitted transactions. Additional ed. (RESTORE WITH NORECOVERY) ily mode. Undo uncommitted transactions, but save the undo
Server: WIN7-32 Connection: Win7-32\Win7 Wew connection properti	Leave the database ready to the transaction logs cannot be resident transaction logs cannot be resident transaction logs can be restored transaction logs can be restored by the database in read-on the database in read	ational, and do not roll back uncommitted transactions. Additional ed. (RESTORE WITH NORECOVERY) ily mode. Undo uncommitted transactions, but save the undo

• When the restore process is complete the **SQL Server Management Studio** window will appear displaying the status of the restore.

elect a page	🖾 Script 👻 🖪 Help	
General	29 scribt 🔺 🔝 Helb	
P Options	Restore options	
	<ul> <li>Overwrite the existing database</li> <li>Preserve the replication setting</li> </ul>	
	Prompt before restoring each b	ackup
	Restrict access to the restored	
	Restore the database files as:	
	Original File Name	Restore As
	ris_Data	C:\Program Files\Receptors\Database\ris
	tore of database 'ris' completed successfully.	
	tore of database 'ris' completed successfully.	ОК
	Leave the database ready to u	se by rolling back uncommitted transactions. Additional
	Leave the database ready to u	
Donn	Leave the database ready to u transaction logs cannot be reat     Leave the database non-opera	se by rolling back uncommitted transactions. Additional
VIN7-32 ionnection: in7-32/win7 Vew connection property	<ul> <li>Leave the database ready to u transaction logs cannot be rest</li> <li>Leave the database non-opera transaction logs can be restore transaction logs can be restore</li> <li>Leave the database in read-on</li> <li>actions in a standby file so that</li> </ul>	se by roling back uncommitted transactions. Additional ored (RESTORE WITH RECOVERY) tional, and do not roll back uncommitted transactions. Addition
Vin7-32 Vin7-32 Vin7-32 Vin7-32 View connection property View con	Leave the database ready to u transaction logs cannot be rest     Leave the database non-opera transaction logs can be restore transaction logs can be restore Leave the database in read-on Leave the database in read-on	se by rolling back uncommitted transactions. Additional ored (RESTORE WITH RECOVERY) tional, and do not roll back uncommitted transactions. Addition d.(RESTORE WITH NORECOVERY) ly mode. Undo uncommitted transactions, but save the undo
VIN7-32 ionnection: in7-32/win7 Vew connection property	<ul> <li>Leave the database ready to u transaction logs cannot be rest</li> <li>Leave the database non-opera transaction logs can be restore transaction logs can be restore</li> <li>Leave the database in read-on</li> <li>actions in a standby file so that</li> </ul>	se by rolling back uncommitted transactions. Additional ored (RESTORE WITH RECOVERY) tional, and do not roll back uncommitted transactions. Addition d.(RESTORE WITH NORECOVERY) ly mode. Undo uncommitted transactions, but save the undo

Figure 287: Restore Status

• Click the OK button and exit SQL Server Management Studio.

## **SQL Maintenance Plan**

- The **SQL Maintenance Plan** will be used to automatically backup the **RIS** database. In this section we will build a plan to backup the RIS database once a week on Sunday's at 2:00 am.
- This feature is **NOT** available in the **SQL Server Management Studio 2005/08 Express** versions it is only available in the full versions of **SQL Server Management Studio 2005/2008**.

Caution: Automatic backups should be performed when the system has a low volume of transactions. Also and most important is that the Security System performs Panel Status checks and temporary card down load at 12:00 am nightly. Therefore all automatic backups should be done at lease two hours prior or after 12:00 am (midnight).

- Open the SQL Server Management Studio as you did the in Backing up the RIS Database section.
- In the left window Click on the Management plus sign once to expand it.

일 New Query   📑   📸 📸 🛅 📑   1	🗃 🖬 🕘 i 🌉 💂	
Dbject Explorer		ails ails Search 0.1600 - win7-PC\win7)\Management
<ul> <li>          → Databases  </li> <li>          → Security  </li> <li>          → Server Objects  </li> <li>          → Replication  </li> <li>          → Management  </li> <li>          → Data Collection  </li> <li>          → Data Collection  </li> <li>          → Collection  </li> <li>          → Security Management  </li> <li>          → Data Collection  </li> <li>          → Collection  </li> <li>          → Maintenance Plans  </li> <li>          → SQL Server Logs  </li> <li>          → Database Mail  </li> <li>          → Legacy  </li> <li>          → SQL Server Agent  </li> </ul>	Name Policy Managem Data Collection Resource Govern Maintenance Pla SQL Server Logs Database Mail Distributed Trans Legacy	ior ns

Figure 288: SQL Server Enterprise Manager Database Console

• Right click on the **Maintenance Plans** in the left window to open the pull down menu then click on New Maintenance Plan.

Figure 289: New Maintenance Plan...

🧏 Microsoft SQL Server Management St	udio		
File Edit View Tools Window	Community Help		
🔛 New Query 📄 📸 📸 🔓		-	
Object Explorer 🚽 🗸 🗸	Object Explore	r Details	
Connect 🛛 📑 📑 🖉 🗐 🍒	@ @ 🖻 孝	🍸 🛃 📓 Search	
🖃 🐻 win7-PC (SQL Server 10.0.1600 - w	ir win7-PC (SQL Serv	ver 10.0.1600 - win7-PC\win7)\Management\Mainte	enance Plans
⊞	Name	Policy Health State	
🗄 🧰 Server Objects			
🕀 🚞 Replication			
🖂 🧰 Management			
🗉 🔮 Policy Management			
🕢 🖂 Data Collection			
🖽 🔄 Resource Governor			
🕀 🛅 Maintenance Plans			
	lew Maintenance Plan		
🔛 Database Mail 🛛 🔥 🖓 Mail Natabase Mail	faintenance Plan Wiza	Ird	
	ïew History		
⊞ 📆 SQL Server Agent 🛛 🕅	eports	•	
F	efresh		

• The **New Maintenance Plan** window will open, by default the name is **Maintenance Plan** you can use this name or create your own.

Figure 290: SQL Server Enterprise Manager Database Console

	12000	and the second sec	
Name:	Maintena	ncePlan	
			- al
		ОК	Cancel

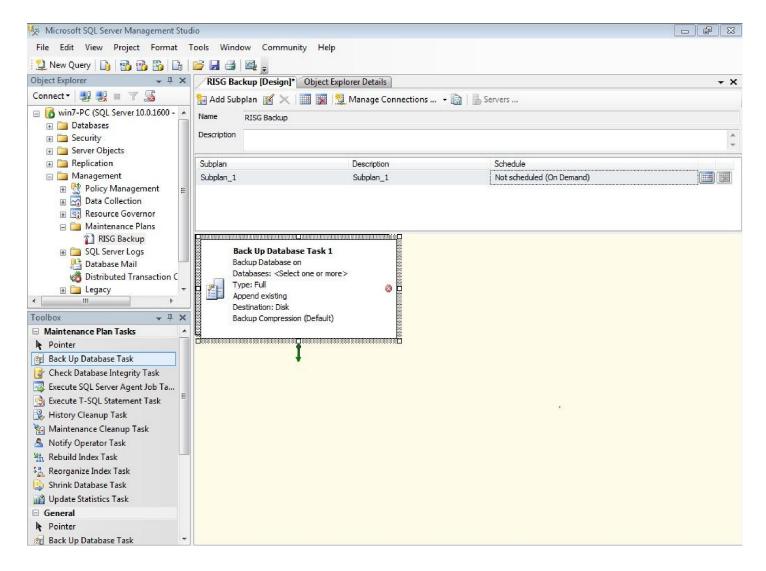
• For the example we are going to change the name to **RISG Backup**. Click OK will finish.

Figure 291: SQL Server Enterprise Manager Database Console

	11000		
Name:	RISG Ba	ickup	
		ОК	Cancel

The first step in creating a database or transaction log backup is to drag and drop Back up database task from the toolbox to the design panel. Then double-click on Back Up Database Task 1 to open the Back Up Database Task box and set the necessary properties.





- Once open we will use the default setting **Local server connection** for our example. To customize your settings click on new.
- 1<sup>st</sup> Click on the dropdown field to bring up the database selection window and select **ris**: click OK

Figure 293: Back up Database Task box

Connection:	Local server connection	New
Backup type:	Full	
Database(s):	<select more="" one="" or=""></select>	•
Backup component		
Oatabase		
⑦ Files and filegroups:		
Backup set will expire:	O All databases	
(@) After		
🔘 On	System databases	
lack up to: 🎯 Disk 🔿 T	арт	
Back up databases acros	<ul> <li>All user databases (excluding master, model, msdb, tempdb) s o</li> </ul>	
	These databases:	dd
	ReportServer  ReportServerTempDB	move
	📄 ris_backup 👻	ntents
If backup files exist:		•
Create a backup file for e	Ignore databases where the state is not online	
Create a sub-director		
	CAVI OK Cancel	
Backup file extension:	OK Calce	
Verify backup integrity		
Back up the tail of the lo	g, and leave the database in the restoring state	
et backup compression:	Jse the default server setting	*

- The settings should be
  - Connection: Local server connection
  - Backup type: choose **Full**.
  - Database: ris.
  - Backup component choose **Database**.
  - Back up to choose **Disk**.
  - Make sure that the **Create a backup file for every database** option is selected and the **Create a sub-directory for each database** box is checked.
  - You can use the default destination folder or specify your own. For this example we will use the default location folder C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL 10MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\Backup.
  - Backup file extension make sure that its value is bak without a leading dot.
  - Check the Verify backup integrity box.

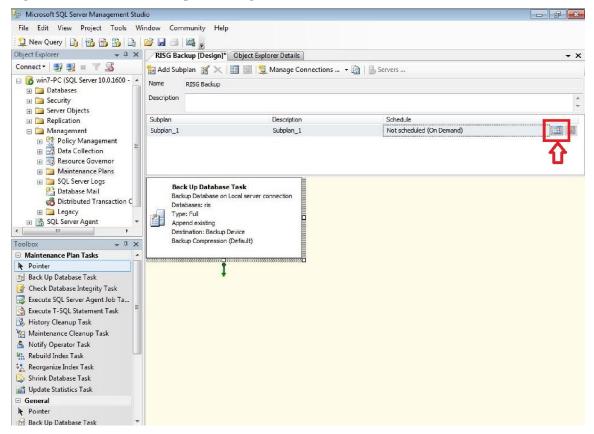
When you are done, the **Backup database task** properties window should look like the one shown on Figure 294, click OK when finish and close out the box.

#### Figure 294: Completed Back up Database Task box

Local server connection		▼ New
Full		
<select more="" one="" or=""></select>		
		] [
14	a days	
10/31/2011		
ane		
		Add
		Remove
		Contents
	Append	Contents
every database	Append	Contents
every database ny for each database	Append	Contents
ry for each database	Append L Server\MSSQL10.MSSQLSERVER\MS	
ry for each database		501) Roduce
ry for each database		SQL\Backup
ry for each database	L Server\MSSQL10.MSSQLSERVER\MS	SQL\Backup
	<select more="" one="" or=""></select>	Select one or more>       14       10/31/2011

 Next we need to set the time parameters for the Back Up Database Task. Double left-click on Subplan\_1 calendar icon to open the Subplan Properties box.

Figure 295: SQL Server Enterprise Manager Database Console



PUBLICATION# 5567

• Give a Description for our example we will use **RISG Backup**.

#### Figure 296: Subplan Properties

🛃 Subplan P	roperties	×
Name:	Subplan_1	
Description:	Subplan_1	
Schedule:	Not scheduled (On Demand)	
		OK Cancel

• Next set the Schedule click on and open the Job Schedule Properties Box.

#### **Figure 297: Subplan Properties**

Subplan P	roperties	
Name:	Subplan_1	
Description:	RISG Backup	
Schedule:	Not scheduled (On Demand)	
		OK Cancel

- Set the Schedule type: Recurring
- Occurs: Weekly
- Recurs every: **1 week** (s) on **Sunday**
- Occurs once at: 2:00:00 AM
- Set the start date, review your settings and click **OK** when Finish

#### Figure 298: Job Schedule Properties Box

lame:	RISG Backup.Subplan_1 Jobs in Schedule
Schedule type:	Recurring
)ne-time occurrence	
Date:	10/12/2011 Time: 11:06:32 PM
Frequency	
Occurs:	Weekly
Recurs every:	1 week(s) on
	Monday Wednesday Friday Saturday
	🔲 Tuesday 🔲 Thursday 📝 Sunday
D 4 7	
Daily frequency	
Occurs once at:	2:00:00 AM
Occurs once at:	
<ul> <li>Occurs once at:</li> <li>Occurs every:</li> </ul>	1 ↔ hour(s) ▼ Starting at: 12:00:00 AM
<ul> <li>Occurs once at:</li> <li>Occurs every:</li> </ul>	1 ↔ hour(s) ▼ Starting at: 12:00:00 AM
Occurs once at:     Occurs every: Duration	1         ↓         Image: Final starting at:         12:00:00 AM         ↓           Ending at:         11:59:59 PM         ↓
Occurs once at:     Occurs every:  Duration Start date:	1         ↓         Nour(s)         Starting at:         12:00:00 AM         ▲           Ending at:         11:59:59 PM         ▲           10/12/2011         ▼         ● End date:         10/12/2011         ▼
Occurs once at:     Occurs every:     Duration	1         ↓         Nour(s)         Starting at:         12:00:00 AM         ▲           Ending at:         11:59:59 PM         ▲           10/12/2011         ▼         ● End date:         10/12/2011         ▼

• Review your settings and click **OK** when Finish.

#### **Figure 299: Subplan Properties**

🛃 Subplan P	roperties 🗖 🗖 💌
Name:	Subplan_1
Description:	RISG Backup
Schedule:	Occurs every week on Sunday at 2:00:00 AM. Schedule v
	OK Cancel

• You have now created a Maintenance Plan to Back Up the ris database once a week.

DATABASES: ris SERVERS: (local) COMPLETE BACKUP Occurs every 1 week(s) on Sunday, at 02:00:00. Backup media: Disk Store backup files in the default SQL Server Backup directory. Verify the backup after completion.

• To save the settings please close out the **SQL Server Enterprise Manager**.

Figure 300: SQL Server Enterprise Manager Database Console

🧏 Microsoft SQL Server Management Stud	dio			6 X
File Edit View Project Tools W				
📜 New Query 👔 📸 📸 🔓	😂 🖬 🕘 🔤 🛓			
Object Explorer + 4 ×		viect Explorer Details		+ X
Connect - 📑 📑 🖉 🔳 🝸 📓		🕱 💆 Manage Connections 🗉	- B I - Servers	
<ul> <li>☐ 6 win7-PC (SQL Server 10.0.1600 - ▲</li> <li>⊕ ☐ Databases</li> </ul>	Name RISG Backup			
🕀 🧰 Security	Description			÷
	Subplan	Description	Schedule	
⊞	Subplan_1	RISG Backup	Occurs every week on Sunday at 2:00:00 AM. Schedule	
Policy Management Data Collection Resource Governor Resource Governor Resource Plans SQL Server Logs Database Mail Distributed Transaction C Legacy SQL Server Agent Toolbox Toolbox A A X Maintenance Plan Tasks	Back Up Database Tas Backup Database on Loca Databases: ris Type: Full Append existing Destination: Backup Devic Backup Compression (Defi	l server connection		
Pointer	<b>1</b>			
😰 Back Up Database Task	•			
🛃 Check Database Integrity Task				
Execute SQL Server Agent Job Ta				
Execute T-SQL Statement Task     Kistory Cleanup Task				
Maintenance Cleanup Task				

• To save the settings please close out the **SQL Server Enterprise Manager** a popup box will open click on **Yes**.

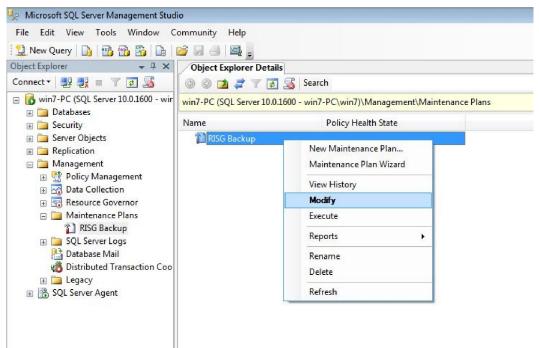
Figure 301: SQL Server Enterprise Manager Database Console

ave changes to the f erver=win7-PC;		
RISG Backup		

### Modifying or Deleting the RISG Maintenance Plans

- Open the SQL Server Management Studio as you did the in Backing up the RIS Database section.
- In the left window Click on the **Management** plus sign once to expand it and the **RISG Backup** icon will appear in the right window.
- Right-Click on the **RISG Backup** icon and either select **Modify** or **delete**.

#### Figure 298: SQL Server Enterprise Manager Database Console



# Net Use

The **Net Use** command is used for creating a Network Logging Printer. This method can be helpful if you require a remote logging printer and cannot provide a serial connection from the Server. Net Use allows you to use a printer connected to any workstation and use the Network for data transmission.

## **Creating a Connection**

- Before creating a connection, you will need to setup the printer on the desired workstation. Use the Printer wizard and create a standard connection that is shared on the Network.
- The operation is completed on the Server. In the operation, you will select an unused port name such as LPT3. Net Use will redirect any information sent to LPT3, to the Network Name used in the Net Use command.
- To create a connection on the Server you will use a Command Prompt Window.
  - § Open a Command Prompt on the Server and type the following command string:

NET USE LPT3 \\Workstation Name\Printer Shared Name /PERSISTENT:YES

- The Persistent switch will create the connection each time the Server is re-booted.
- Now that the connection is established, you can enter the printer in the System Control file as LPT3.
- There are additional Net Use commands. For more information, at the Command prompt type:

NET USE /?